



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

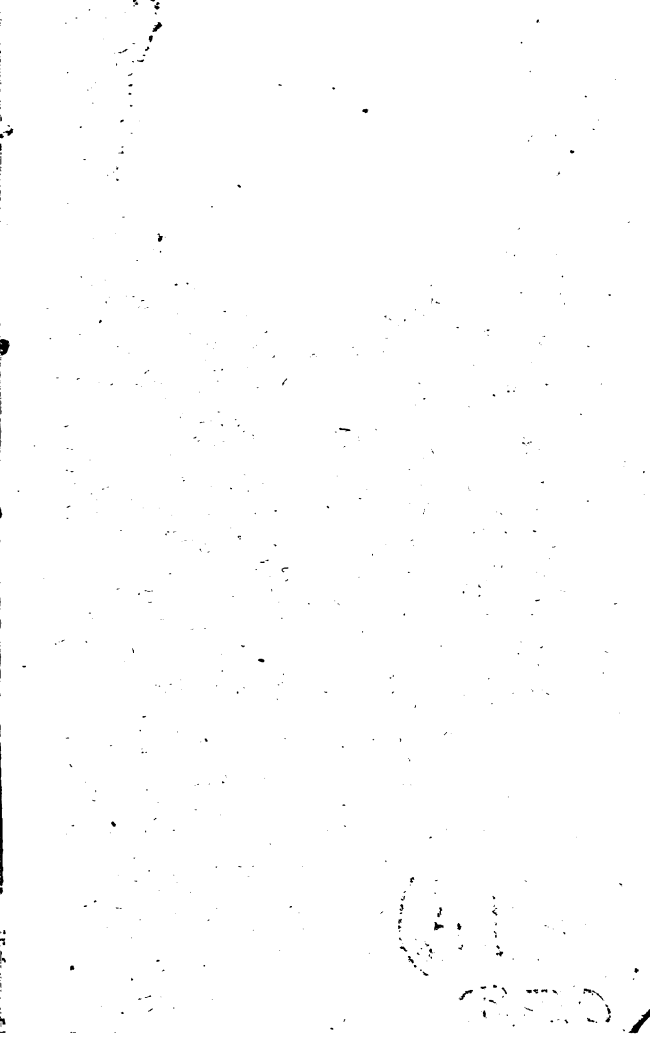
NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES

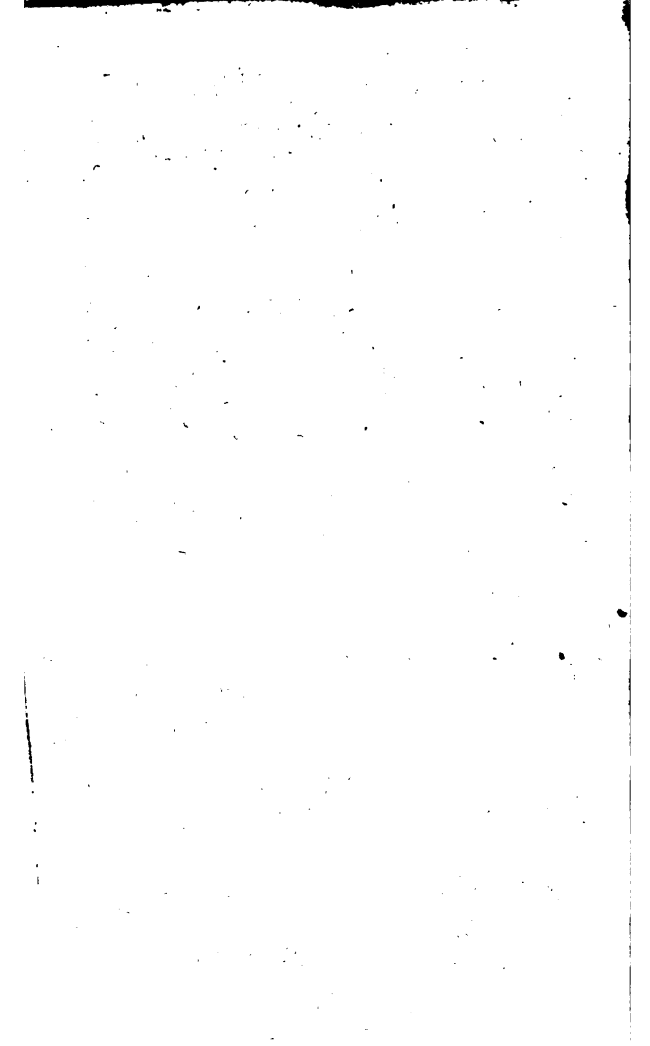


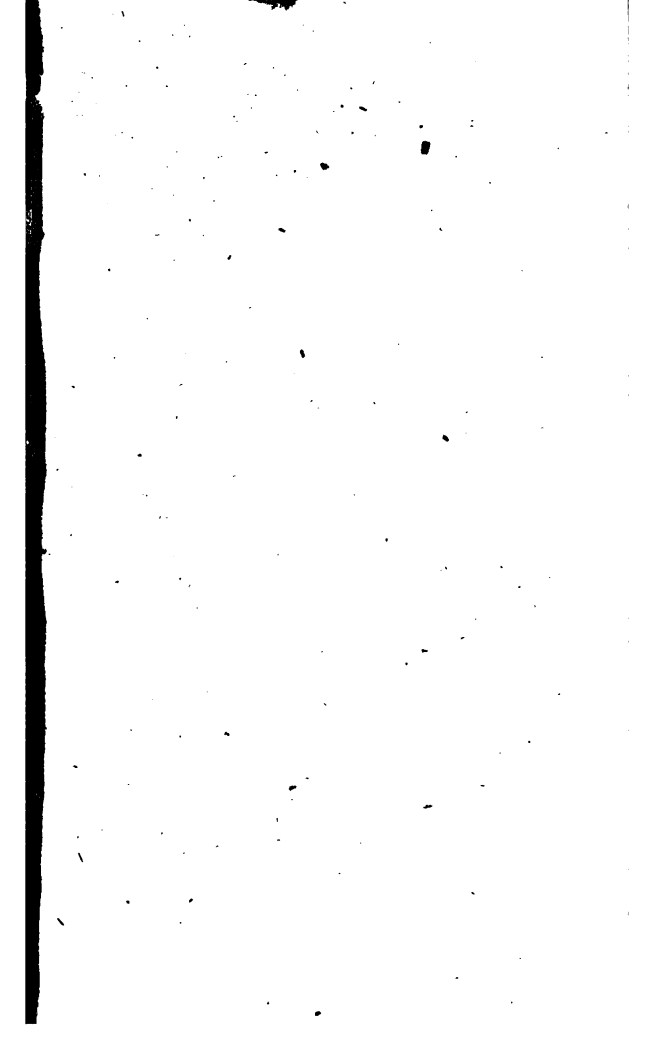
3 3433 08231347 3

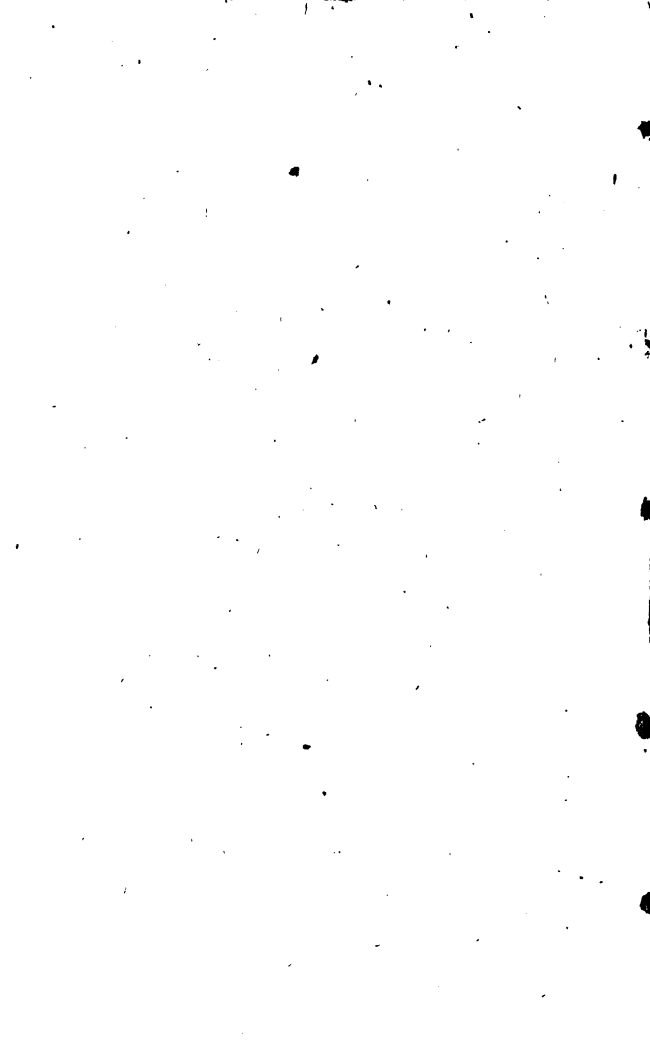












Alexander **ADAM'S**
Latin Grammar

ABRIDGED ;

AND

ARRANGED

IN A

COURSE OF PRACTICAL LESSONS,

ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY

OF

YOUNG LEARNERS.



The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.—*Author of the original Grammar.*



BY WILLIAM RUSSELL.

NEW-HAVEN :

PUBLISHED BY A. H. MALTBY & Co.

T. G. Woodward & Co. Print.

1824.

C. B



BE it remembered, That on the twenty-third day of April, in the forty-eighth year of the Independence of the United States of America, A. D. 1824, A. H. MALTBY & CO. of the said District, have deposited in this Office the title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following—to wit:

“Adam's Latin Grammar Abridged; and arranged in a course of Practical Lessons, adapted to the capacity of young Learners. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.—Author of the original Grammar. By WILLIAM RUSSELL.”

In conformity to the act of the Congress of the United States, entitled “An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned”—and also to the act entitled “An act supplementary to an act entitled ‘An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned,’ and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints.”

CHAS. A. INGERSOLL,
Clerk of the District of Connecticut.



TRANSFER FROM LENOX.

PREFACE.



THE early age at which most boys begin the study of the languages, makes it extremely difficult for teachers to succeed in making them thoroughly acquainted with Latin grammar. This difficulty can, indeed, be partially obviated by constant recourse to oral explanation,—an expedient, however, which, when the teacher has a great number of very young scholars, besides being excessively fatiguing to himself, is not ultimately successful with his pupils. The lapse of a few days or, perhaps, of a few hours, is often sufficient to obliterate every trace of his anxious exertions, from the young mind which is yet too feeble to be very retentive.

Many successful endeavors have been used to remove this impediment from the course of instruction in the grammar of our own language, by furnishing elementary treatises, simplified to the capacity of the youngest class of learners ; but the grammar of the Latin language, is studied without the least benefit of any such assistance. Teachers who make use of Murray's Abridgement of English Grammar, find it an excellent preparative for a more comprehensive view of the subject. A corresponding book for young learners in Latin, might, it is presumed, be useful in the same way ; and the following little work is respectfully presented to instructors, in the hope that it will be found, in some measure, suited to this purpose.

The author would here beg permission to say one word on *the propriety of using abridgements*.—Too much cannot be said against the plan of adopting abridgements *instead* of larger works. A teacher who takes this method of abridging the mental labor of his scholars, takes a sure way of abridging their knowledge. But this concession does not imply that an abridgement is not a good thing in its proper place,—*as introductory* to a larger work. Unqualified objections to abridgements may seem very plausible in theory ; but they fall to the ground, the moment you bring them in contact with practice. Take the science of geography for an example. If teachers acted on the principle of objectors to abridgements, they would, instead of permitting children to make use of a little book, suited to their years and their capacity, insist on their studying Morse's octavo Geography.

It would, perhaps, be better to defer the study of the languages, till the scholar's progress could be facilitated by maturer years, and a maturer mind. Be this suggestion as it may, one thing is certain : we have found great benefit resulting from introductory abridgements, in other branches of education,—sufficient, surely, to authorise our making the experiment with the Latin language.

The following work will, it is hoped, do much to aid the scholar's exertions ; but it is by no means designed to cherish sloth : it contains, in fact, a great deal more of practical exercise, than the plan of most grammars will admit. To make the principles of Latin grammar as accessible as *simple language* and *familiar illustration* can make them, has been a constant endeavor. Nor is there any real ground for the apprehension that the subject will thus be rendered too easy for the mind, and be studied with remissness. *Principles* can never be made too easy to the learner. The danger

does not lye here : it lyes in dispensing with the *application* of principles. The teacher's great aim, in the early stages of instruction, should be, to lay before the mind, for its first efforts, something which it can understand and reduce to practice. Application will thus be rendered pleasant, and will gradually become habitual.

Another point which has been constantly kept in view, is, *frequent recapitulation*. Without incessant recourse to this important aid, no scholar can possess an intelligent and familiar acquaintance with the contents of his grammar ; and nothing is more conducive to thorough scholarship, than a seasonable attention to this point, simple as it is.—Much space, in the following pages, is assigned to *practical exercises* on what is committed to memory. In no other way can a scholar be really prepared to begin parsing and translation in his first author. The plan of skimming over the grammar, in a mere superficial perusal, leaves but an obscure and confused impression of its contents, and lays the scholar under the necessity of wasting much of his time, in troublesome references to the book, for what he ought to find on his memory ; and, after all, the recollection which is obtained in this way, soon fades from the mind, and only leaves room for the introduction of error.

The *explanations*, contained in the Abridgement, are, it is hoped, sufficiently copious to make every thing perfectly plain to the young beginner, and, as applied to the derivation of grammatical terms, are intended not only to give him an accurate knowledge of the subject, but to render it pleasing to him, and to open the way for subsequent attainments in etymological science. The *interrogatory recapitulation* will, by the various forms, in which it presents the in-

flections, enable the scholar to retain them in his memory, and recognise them with readiness, when they occur in his subsequent reading. Correctness and fluency in etymological parsing, are, in this way, secured, before the learner lays aside his grammar; and, by the time that he has finished the combined exercises in *syntax* and *translation*, he has received a thorough preparation for his first Latin author.

Strict attention has been paid to arranging the subject in such a manner, as to insert the definitions and the explanations in the places in which they are required to elucidate what is committed to memory. No lesson contains any thing anticipated from another, and forced on the learner, before it can be fully understood; and no explanation is postponed, so as to leave any thing unintelligible in what is prescribed to him. An adherence to this method, occasions, sometimes, a deviation from the arrangement of the original work; but, the effects resulting from this alteration, will be found very conducive to clear and accurate ideas of grammar.

The *synthetic* method, observed in most treatises in grammar, makes them much fitter to be used by mature minds, as systematic *recapitulations* of knowledge which has been already acquired, than by the uninformed minds of the young, as *introductions* to science of which they are yet ignorant. In any other course of mental pursuit, it would be readily admitted that we should defer demanding a synthesis, till the student is become familiar with the subject, by analysis. But not so in teaching grammar.—The learner is made to commence by *assuming* that the subject consists of so many parts, and that these are subdivided into many more; with the definitions and the uses of all which, his memory must, in the mean time, be burdened;—and after all this

labor is undergone, he must turn back, and begin his first practical lesson by doing what he should have been made to do at first,—taking one branch of the subject, and applying his mind to it exclusively. The common mode of treating grammar, begins, in fact, with throwing so many impediments in the learner's way. On the other hand, let the scholar commence his lessons by taking up the first branch of the subject, and learning it; let him then go on to the next, and so on, till the whole science is acquired. At the close of every part, he will be able to arrange it synthetically; and he will be at last prepared for such a view of the whole subject; but not till then can he understand a synthetic arrangement, or receive any benefit from it.—To suit this purpose, an interrogatory synopsis is subjoined to every part, and a concluding one to the whole.

References are made to *English grammar*, when they serve to illustrate a characteristic peculiarity of either language; but they are selected so as to present nothing more than is absolutely necessary, in a comparison of English and Latin grammar. The abridgement may therefore be studied with equal advantage by pupils who have studied English grammar, and by those who have not. To the one class of learners, this part of the work will be a useful exercise in recapitulation, presented in a new form; to the other, it will give important information; whilst, to both, it makes the study of one language throw light on the other.

The plan of *subjoining the syntax of every part of speech to its etymology*, has several very important advantages. It shows the scholar clearly the meaning and the use of inflections, and completes his knowledge of them; it forms the best practical method of recapitulating etymology, and of impressing it permanently on the memory; and affords op-

portantity of reducing it immediately to practice. In the common way of teaching grammar, the inflections are suffered, if not to slip from the memory, to lye an unmeaning load, till syntax is learned, when they are at last brought into use.—It is a principle which is admitted in every other department of knowledge, that it is more conducive to improvement, and, especially, if the learner is young, to stop at short stages, and practise what is acquired, than to grasp, in the first place, at a theoretical view of a whole subject, and then go back to the application of its parts.

The *arrangement of syntax* is made to depend on the order of the parts of speech, and is carried no farther, in any instance, than it is dependent on the part of speech to which it is subjoined ; so that confusion and perplexity are avoided, and nothing is required of the scholar which he does not understand.—Great pains have been taken to form the exercises on the rules of syntax in such a manner that most of the examples, besides illustrating the rules to which they properly belong, include an illustration of a foregoing rule. The pupil is thus kept from forgetting what he has once learned, and is saved the unpleasant trouble of learning over again what he has almost or entirely forgot.

The *deviations from the original Grammar* are, in all cases, as few as possible, and occur only when they are thought essential to practical improvement. The difference between the Abridgement and the original work, consists principally, it will be observed, in arrangement.

This abridgement, though designed chiefly for the assistance of instructors who have the charge of young pupils, may be found serviceable to persons who are desirous of studying the Latin language, without the superintendence of a teacher ; and to this class of learners it offers two peculiar

advantages,—its simplicity, and the assistance which it affords in the first stages of parsing and translation. The perspicuity and brevity of this work, will, it is hoped, render it useful in the instruction of female pupils ; as it will enable them to acquire a knowledge of Latin grammar, with more ease and pleasure, than the comparative dryness and prolixity of most books of this sort, will permit.

The following suggestions are respectfully offered to teachers who are disposed to make use of the Abridgement.—It will be found of the greatest service, to have every lesson read to the teacher, the day before it is recited. An opportunity will thus be given to ascertain whether the scholar understands the lesson, perfectly,—a point of the utmost consequence in relation to his first impression being the correct one, and to his retaining it permanently. This, too, is the proper time for fixing in his mind the correct pronunciation of every word. It is too late to try to remove errors of this kind, when the scholars' memory is pre-occupied by a false quantity or accent, which the reiteration of the word, in the preparing of his lesson, has rendered almost indelible. On the other hand, let the correct pronunciation be secured in season, and such embarrassments are entirely avoided.

After all the pains that have been taken in the following pages, to select the plainest phraseology, some words are unavoidably used, which a very young scholar will need to have explained to him by his teacher. On this account, too, it is important that every lesson be read beforehand.

To avoid confusion, the interrogatory recapitulation is, sometimes, reserved till the close of a section ; but the best manner of using it, will be, to prescribe, along with every lesson, as much of the recapitulation as is required.

The quantity of both must, of course, depend on the capacity of the pupil.

Smaller type is used in the expression of subordinate ideas ; but it is not meant that any thing should be omitted in the first perusal, and left till the second.

With a view to avoid multiplying exceptions which must be learned along with the rules, and the regular examples, and which, by their number or their intricacy, serve to obliterate the principal idea, the irregular inflections are reserved for an appendix ; and the rarer exceptions in syntax are managed in the same way.—The study of the appendix should be begun as soon as the scholar has finished the *regular substantives*. A similar course should be taken with the verbs and the exceptions in syntax.

New-Township Academy, }
New-Haven, March, 1824. }

* * The want of correspondence between the Abridgement, and the specimen given in the advertisement of its publication, was occasioned by the impossibility of selecting a part which would give an exact idea of the work, and at the same time, not extend beyond the limits of a prospectus.



¶ The following marks are used to facilitate a correct pronunciation :

1st. ' (an accent,) used, as in English, to denote the syllable which has the most forcible sound ; thus Pen'-nam, lí-ber, cor'-poris, am-a'-re, le-gis'-sem.

2d. - (a short dash,) denoting the *accented open* sound of a vowel.—The open sound is so called, because the enunciation of it *opens* the organs of speech.—This sound occurs in the English words *Mate*, *mete*, *mile*, *more*, *mute*, and in such Latin words as *Amáris*, *habéret*, *virílis*, *regnórum*, *lúcis*.

3d. · (a dot,) expressing the *unaccented open* sound of a vowel. This sound is exemplified in the first syllable of the following English words : *Debate*, *diameter*, *morass*, *mutation* ; and in these Latin words : *Relá'tum*, *bten'nis*, *moné're*, *hisérunt*.

The *accented shut* sound, (so called, because, in enunciating it, the organs are comparatively *shut*,) is heard in the English words *Mat*, *met*, *mill*, *moss*, *must*, and in the Latin words *Amab'ilis*, *sem'inis*, *legis'sem*, *host'is*, *ful'men*. This sound is distinguished by the accent being placed over the *consonant* which immediately follows it.

4th. ~ (an abbreviator,) used to signify the *unaccented shut* sound of a vowel, as enunciated in the *first* syllable of the following English words : *Blasp'heme*, *festivity*, *distress*, *mortality*, *undivided* ; and in these Latin words : *Amávis'sem*, *pérte'runt*, *sínis'tram*, *hóst'lis*, *fúlmin'cus*.

Initial and final syllables, when they are not marked, follow the analogy of English pronunciation ; thus,

Initial : *Amáris*, (ámá'ris,) *elú'sit*, (élú'sit,) *imá'go*, (ímá-go,) *onus'tus*, (ónus'tus,) *uní'us*, (ún'us,) *clamá'bis*, (clámá'-bis,) *legis'tis*, (légis'tis,) *dié'rum*, (dié'rum,) *doná'tus*, (doná'-tus,) *duó'rum*, (duó'rum.)

Final : *Pen'na*, (pen'ná,) *vā'te*, (vā'té,) *fí'ni*, (fí'ní,) *jó'co*, (jó'cò,) *fruc'tu*, (fruc'tú,) *pen'nas*, (pen'nás,) *vā'tes*, (vā'tés,) *fí'nis*, (fí'nís,) *jó'cas*, (jó'cós,) *fruc'tus*, (fruc'tús.)

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.

Explanation 1st. **T**HE Latin language is that which was spoken by the Romans,—a people who received their name from their capital, the city of Rome. The language of the Romans received its name from the following circumstance.—That nation was formed of various tribes which were originally distinct and independent. Among these, the *Latins*, or inhabitants of Latium,—the district in which Rome was situated,—held a distinguished rank.—In a union of tribes, the most distinguished naturally gives its name to the whole nation of which it forms but a part. The Romans, accordingly, were sometimes called *Latins*; their language was called the Latin language; and its principles are therefore styled *Latin grammar*.

2d. The word *grammar* is taken from a Greek word which signifies *writing*—that is, the expressing of our thoughts by writing. It is used, however, in a wider sense, to signify the art of expressing our thoughts, whether by writing or speaking, and is more commonly employed as the name of the science which is the foundation of that art, and which may, in simple language, be called a knowledge of words.

3d. The word *orthography* means *writing correctly* : it is applied to words considered singly, and signifies writing them correctly, as to their letters and syllables. In a wider sense, it is used as the name of that part of grammar, which treats of letters and syllables.

Orthography is called the *first* part of grammar ; because, as grammar is the science of words, orthography, which treats principally of letters, is the simplest part of the subject, and, therefore, that which must be *learned first*.

OBSERVATION I. The Latin alphabet contains twenty-five letters, corresponding, in form and in sound, to those of the English alphabet.

Exception. The letter *w* was not used by the Latins.—The letter *u* serves, in some words, the same purpose as our *w*.

II. Letters are divided in the following manner :

I. CLASS, VOWELS :

a, e, i, o, u, y.

Explanation. The first class of letters is called *vowels* ; (*sounding letters* ;) because every letter in that class, makes a complete *sound* by itself ; as *a*.

II. CLASS, CONSONANTS :

Consisting of all the letters which do not belong to the vowel-class.

Explan. The second class is called *consonants* ; (*sounding together* ;) because the letters of this class do not make a complete sound by themselves, but are sounded *together* with a vowel ; thus, *b*, in which we can observe two sounds,—one made by first closing the lips, and then opening them suddenly,—the other, the sound of the vowel *e*.

III. CLASS, DIPHTHONGS :

æ, ai, au, ei, eu, œ, oi.

Expl. *Diphthong* means *double sound*, and is used to express the joining of two sounds ; for, in the early state of

the Latin language, the sounds of both vowels were always heard, in pronouncing a diphthong.

Æ and *œ* are printed as double letters ; because the shape of the letter *e* admitted of its being easily joined by the pen, to the letters *a* and *o* ; and this form of these diphthongs having become prevalent in writing, was naturally adopted in printing.—These diphthongs are enunciated either as *e* in the English word *mete* ; thus, *læ'do*, *pœ'na* : or as the same letter in the word *met* ; thus, *hæc*, *Æd'ipus*.

Æi, *eu*, and *oi*, sound as in English words.

Au sound as in the English word *vaunt* ; thus, *au'rum*.

Ei, as in the English word *height* ; thus, *om'neis*.

Note. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, and *uo*, follow the analogy of English orthoepy :—they are sometimes pronounced as diphthongs, sometimes as separate letters ; thus,

<i>English</i> :	<i>Suasion</i> , dual.	<i>Latin</i> :	<i>Suā'deo</i> , <i>dū'as</i> .
"	<i>Conquest</i> , duet.	"	<i>Sues'co</i> , <i>sū'em</i> .
"	<i>Quire</i> , fluid.	"	<i>Sē'qui</i> , <i>tū'is</i> .
"	<i>Quotient</i> , fluor.	"	<i>Quō'rum</i> , <i>ru'o</i> .

When *ui* are used as an *improper*, or false diphthong, the sound of *u* is dropped ; thus, *Cui*, *huic*, which are pronounced as if written *ki*, *hike*.

Interrogatory Recapitulation.

By whom was the Latin language spoken ? From what did the Romans receive their name ? Why is their language called the Latin language, and its principles Latin grammar ?

What is the meaning of the Greek word from which the English word *grammar* is taken ? In what wider sense is it used ? How is it more commonly employed ? In simple language, what may grammar be called ?

What does the word orthography mean ? How is it applied ? With what particular signification ? In what wider sense is it used ? Why is orthography called the *first* part of grammar ?

How many letters are there in the Latin alphabet ? In what respects do they correspond to those of the English al-

phabet? What English letter is not found in the Latin alphabet? What letter serves the same purpose? Into how many classes are letters divided? What is the first called? Name the vowels. What does the word vowels mean? Why are these letters called vowels? Give an example. What is the second class of letters called? Of what letters does it consist? What does the word consonants signify? Why are these letters called consonants? Give an example. How many simple sounds are there in the letter *b*? Name them. What is the third class of letters called? Name the diphthongs. What does the word diphthong mean? How is it used? Why? Why are *æ* and *œ* printed as double letters? How do these diphthongs sound? Give examples. How are the diphthongs *ai*, *eu*, and *oi*, sounded? How is the diphthong *au* sounded? Give an example. How the diphthong *ei*? Give an example. How are *ua*, *ue*, and *uo*, pronounced? Mention examples. When *ui* are used as an improper diphthong, what becomes of the letter *u*? Give examples.*

* The interrogatory synopsis, mentioned in the preface, is, on account of the shortness of this part of the subject, not detached from the recapitulation.

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.—NOUNS.

Section 1.—Substantives.

Explanation. **ETYMOLOGY** means, literally, the true origin, or *derivation* of words. This term, however, has been extended in its application, so as to include not only the manner in which words are derived from one another, but the classes in which they are arranged, whether by their signification, or by their form, and the changes of form, which they undergo, to express the changes of their meaning.—The word etymology is used, in this extended sense, as the name of the second part of grammar.

OBSERVATION I.—The first class of Latin words is called nouns.

Note. Here we observe a striking difference between Latin and English grammar. The first class of English words, are the articles *a* and *the* :—the former is used when we speak of an object, *without* making a *particular* reference to it ; thus, we say *a* book, *a* house, when it is not important to tell what book, or what house we mean :—the latter is used *when we make a particular* reference to an object ; thus, “ *The* book which I am reading.” “ *The* house in which I live.”

In Latin, there is no word of this kind. We are left to infer from the meaning of a sentence, whether the writer makes a particular reference to an object or does not ; thus, if we find in a Latin author, the word *liber*, (book,) we must judge from the meaning of the whole sentence, whether, when we render it in English, we are to call it *a* book or *the* book.

Explan. The word *noun* means *name*, and is used to denote that class of words, which expresses the *names* of things.

OBSERV. II. Words of this class are subdivided into two sorts: of these, the first is **SUBSTANTIVES**.

Explan. *Substantives* receive their name from their being used chiefly to express *substances*. The term substantive is commonly applied to all those words which denote persons, places, or things.

OBSERV. III. The *signification* of substantives divides them into two classes, which are not always denoted by a difference of *form*. These classes relate to the *extent* of the signification of 'substantives, and are designated by the grammatical names of

I. COMMON SUBSTANTIVES,

which are so called, because they do not belong to a particular person or thing, but are *common* to several, or to all of a kind; thus, the word *hō'mo*, (man,) does not belong to one man in particular, but is common to mankind.

II. PROPER SUBSTANTIVES,

which are thus named, because they are *not* common to several persons or things, but are *proper* (that is, are peculiar, or belong) to *one* person or thing; thus, the word *Geor'gius*, (George,) does not belong to every man, but only to an individual of that name.—To this class of substantives belong the names of persons, countries, states, cities, mountains, rivers, lakes, &c.

Recapitulation.

What does the word *etymology* mean? How has this term been extended in its application? What part of grammar is designated by the word *etymology*? Compare the definition of *etymology* with that of *orthography*, and mention the difference between these two parts of grammar?

What is the first class of Latin words called? Does the classification of words in Latin and in English grammar correspond? What is the first class of English words? How are these words used? Give examples. Is there any article in Latin? How can we tell when a writer makes a particular reference to an object, and when he does not? Give an example.

Mention the meaning and the use of the word noun. How are words of this class subdivided? What is the first of these called? From what do substantives receive their name? How is the term substantive commonly applied?

Into how many classes are substantives divided by their signification? To what do these classes relate? How are these classes designated? Why are common substantives so called? Give an example. Why are proper substantives so called? Give an example. What words belong to this class of substantives?



FIRST DECLENSION.

Explan. *Declension* is used as the grammatical term for that classification of substantives, which, though it is dependent on their *signification*, is recognized only by their *form*, and regards the letters which constitute their final syllables. Substantives, when thus classified, admit of being subdivided into classes, called *declensions*.

The *first* declension is so called, because it is that which Latin grammarians have always placed *first*.

Example, PEN'NA, (pen.)

The word *example* here implies that *penna* is an *example* of the manner in which all substantives of this declension form their last syllables.

SINGULAR NUMBER.

The word *number* is used to classify substantives, according to the *number* of objects which they represent.

Singular means *single*, or one, and is applied to substantives which express no more than one object.

Nominative case, Pen'na, a pen or the pen.

The word *case* is used to signify the changes which are made on the last syllables of substantives, so as to express

those modifications of their meaning, which, in English, are sometimes marked by the words *of*, *to*, *for*, *by*, &c. prefixed to the substantive.—In the English sentence, “He writes with a pen,” the word *with* expresses that modification of meaning, which regards the connection between the person’s writing, and the pen with which he writes : in a corresponding Latin sentence, this modification of meaning would not be expressed, as in English, by *prefixing* a word to that which signifies pen, but would be indicated, by the last syllable of the word *penna* itself ; thus, *Scri’bit*, (he writes,) *pennā*, (with a pen.)

The term *case* is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to fall*.—The nominative case, because it simply expresses the name of a person or of a thing, may, from its simplicity, be compared to a *straight line*. Every other case, by the change which it makes on the last syllable of the substantive, makes it, as it were, *fall*, or *decline* from the nominative. Hence, all cases, but the nominative, are sometimes called *oblique cases* ; and the words *decline*, *declining*, and *declension*, and *inflect*, (bend, or incline,) and *inflection*, are all applied to a grammatical exhibition, or statement, of the cases of substantives.—The word *case* should not, strictly speaking, include the nominative itself ; but, as it was used to designate *the greater number* of the states in which the last syllables of a substantive may be found, it was arbitrarily extended to them *all*.

The word *nominative* comes from a Latin word which signifies *name*. This case accordingly expresses merely the *name* of an object, and is represented in English, by a substantive, with or without an article ; as *penna*, a pen or *the pen* ; *justi’tia*, justice.

Genitive case, Pen’næ, *of* a pen or *of* the pen.

The word *genitive* refers to birth, and by representing one thing, as it were, born of another, expresses forcibly the idea of intimate connection or possession. This case is commonly represented in English by the word *of* ; but, sometimes, by an apostrophe, and the letter *s* ; thus, *Color* the color *pennæ* *of* the pen, or *color pennæ*, the pen’s color.

Dative case, Pen’næ, *to* or *for* a pen, or *to* or *for* the pen.

Dative means *giving*, and is applied to the third case of substantives, because it is by this case, that the Latins expressed the object to or for which any thing is given or done ; thus *Nō'cet pennæ*, it injures, that is, it gives, or does injury to, the pen.—*To* and *for* are, accordingly, the common meanings of this case.

Accusative case, Pen'nam, a pen or the pen.

The word *accusative* signifies *accusing*, and is applied to this case, because it is sometimes used to express the object of an *accusation*. It is more commonly used, however, with a more extensive signification, to denote the object of an action. This case requires no other sign to express it in English, than a substantive, with or without an article ; thus, *Culpat* (he blames) *ignā'viam*, sloth. *Trac'tat* (he handles) *pennam*, the pen.

Vocative case, Pen'na, O pen.

Vocative signifies *calling*. This case is used in *calling*, *invoking*, or *speaking to*, a person or a thing, and corresponds to the English *invoking* word, *O*, or to a substantive used without an article ; as *Justitia!* justice ! or *O* justice !

Ablative case, Pen'nà, *with, from, in, or by*, a pen, or *with, &c.* the pen.

The word *ablative* means *taking away*, and is used as the name of the sixth case, because it sometimes expresses the object from which a thing is *taken away*. It is usually employed in a more extensive sense, to signify any relation of objects, which is expressed by the English words *with, from, in, and by* ; thus *Scribit*, (he writes,) *pennà*, *with* a pen.

The circumflex over the letter *a*, distinguishes the ablative from the nominative and vocative cases.

PLURAL NUMBER.

The word *plural* signifies *more*, and designates substantives which express *more than one* object.

Nominative case, Pen'næ, pens or the pens.

Genitive, „ Pennā'rum, of pens or of the pens.

Dative, „ Pen'nis, to or for pens, or to or for the pens.

Accusative, „ Pen'nas, pens or the pens.

Vocative, „ Pen'næ, O pens.

Ablative, „ Pen'nis, with, from, in or by pens, or with, &c. the pens.

Note 1st. In English nouns there are but three cases ; and these correspond to Latin cases, in the following manner :

English.	Latin.
Nominative,.....	Nominative.
Possessive,.....	Genitive.
Objective,.....	Accusative.

Note 2d. In the mode of expressing the distinction of number, there is a coincidence between Latin and English grammar. Both languages form the plural number by final letters, differing from those of the singular ; thus,

	Latin.	English.
Singular,	Penna,	pen.
Plural,	Pennæ,	pens.

RULES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

GENDER.

Explan. *Gender* is the grammatical term for the distinction of *sex*. *Sex* is that difference between animals, which, when we speak of them, is expressed by using the words *he* and *she*,—and things without life, for which we use the word *it*. There are, accordingly, three genders.

1st. *Masculine*, or *male*, including substantives for which we may substitute the word *he* ; thus, *Vir*, (man.)

2d. *Feminine*, or *female*, including substantives for which we may substitute the word *she* ; as *Fem'ina*, (woman.)

3d. *Neuter*. The word *neuter* means *neither*, and is applied to substantives which are *neither* of the masculine nor of the feminine gender, and for which we may substitute the word *it* ; thus, *Regnum*, (kingdom.)

Note 1st. A word which may be used with reference either to the male or to the female sex, is said to be of the *common* gender, because it is *common* to both genders ; thus *Pá'rens*, (parent.)

2d. The gender of substantives ought to depend on the sex of the objects which they express. Accordingly, *vir*, (man,) is masculine ; *femīna*, (woman,) feminine ; and *reg-num*, (kingdom,) neuter.—But this rule, though always observed in English, is not always observed in Latin ; thus, the English word *pen* is of the *neuter* gender, but the Latin word *penna* is of the *feminine* gender.

RULE. Most substantives of the first declension are of the *feminine* gender.

ROOT.*

Explan. By *root* is meant the *first part* of a word,—the part which commonly remains unchanged throughout the cases ; thus, the letters *penn*, which form the first part of the word *penna*, stand the same in all the cases.—The reason why the word *root* is used as the grammatical term for the first part of a word, is that the first syllable or syllables of a word, are, as it were, the *root* from which spring the final letters.

RULE. Most substantives of this declension have for their *root*, all the letters which precede final *a* of the singular nominative.

* As inflection divides words into two parts, it is impossible to give the pupil an accurate idea of it, without distinguishing these parts. Accordingly, it may be observed that learners who are not taught to separate termination from root, have very confused notions of termination itself, and, consequently, of inflection. But the most important practical advantage of treating the roots of words separately, is, the facility with which the learner is enabled to decline substantives of the second, and, especially, of the third declension ; in which he otherwise finds it extremely difficult to ascertain the proper mode of forming the oblique case.

TERMINATION.

Explan. *Termination* means *end*, and is therefore used as the grammatical term for the *ending*, that is, the last syllable or syllables of a word, or all the letters which follow the *root*.—In all the cases of *penna*, the termination is marked by Italic letters.

RULE I. Most substantives of the first declension have the same *terminations*, in all their cases, as those of *penna*.

RULE II. To decline a substantive of the first declension, take the *root* of the word, and prefix it to the *termination* of every case.

Substantives to be declined by the preceding rules. Vīa, a way; Au'la, a hall; Au'ra, a breeze; Mū'sa, a muse; Tū'ba, a trumpet; Gā'lēa, a helmet; Lit'era, a letter; Fem'ina, a woman; Tū'nica, a coat; Tō'ga, a gown.

Recapitulation.

What does the word declension denote? How are substantives, when thus classified, subdivided? Why is the first declension so called?

How is the word *number* used? What does the word *singular* mean? To what substantives is it applied? What does the word *plural* signify? What substantives does it designate? Mention the coincidence between the Latin and the English language in expressing the distinction of number. Give examples.

How is the word *case* used? In the English sentence, "He writes with a pen," what does the word *with* express? How would this modification of meaning be expressed in a corresponding Latin sentence? Mention an example. What is the term *case* derived from? Illustrate this derivation. What are all cases, but the nominative, sometimes called? How are the words *decline*, *declining*, and *declension*, *inflect*, and *inflection*, applied? Is the word *case* strictly applicable to the nominative? Why is it applied to *all* the states in which the last syllables of a substantive may be found? What

does the word *nominative* come from? What does this case express? How is it represented in English? Give an example. What does the word *genitive* refer to? What idea does this case express? How is this case represented in English? Mention an example. What does the word *dative* signify? Why is it applied to the third case? Give an example. What are the common meanings of this case? What does the word *accusative* mean? Why is it applied to this case? How is this case more commonly used? What is the English sign of this case? Give examples. What does *vocative* signify? How is this case used? To what does it correspond in English? Mention an example. What does the word *ablative* mean? Why is this word used as the name of the sixth case? How is it usually employed? Give an example. What is the use of the circumflex over *a* final of the singular ablative?

How many cases are there in English nouns? Mention them along with the Latin cases to which they correspond.

What substantive is given as an example of the first declension? What is meant by this use of the word *example*?

Recite the definitions of common and proper substantives. Of which sort is *penna*? Recite the definitions of the genders. To what gender should *penna* belong? Recite the 2d note that follows the definitions of the genders. State the rule on the gender of substantives of the first declension. Of what gender therefore is *penna*?

Decline *penna* throughout its numbers and cases. In what number and case do you find *penna*?—*pennam*?—*pennæ*? *pennis*?—*pennarum*?—*pennas*?

What is the singular nominative of *penna*?—the plur. nom.?—the sing. gen.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. ab.?—the plur. ab.? What cases of *penna* are alike?

What is the *English* of the sing. nom. of *penna*?—of the plur. nom.?—&c., throughout, as in last paragraph.

What is gender? What is sex? How many genders are there? Mention the first. What does it include? Give an example. What does the word *feminine* mean? What does it include? Mention an example. What does the word *neu-*

ter mean? How is it applied? Give an example. Of what gender is a word said to be, which may refer either to the male or to the female sex? Why? Give an example. On what ought the gender of substantives to depend? Mention examples. Is this rule always observed in Latin? Give examples. Of what gender are most substantives of the first declension?

What is meant by the *root* of a word? Mention an example. Why is the word *root* used as the grammatical term for the first part of a word? What is the root of most substantives of the first declension? Spell the root of *via*, *aula*, and all the other examples which follow Rule II. on *termination*.

What does the word *termination* signify? How is it used? By what mark may you distinguish the terminations of *penna*? What terminations have most substantives of the first declension? Recite the terminations throughout? In what number and case do you find the termination *a*?—*am*?—*æ*?—*is*?—*as*?—*arum*? What is the termination of the sing. nom.?—plur. nom.?—sing. gen.?—plur. gen.?—sing. dat.?—plur. dat.?—sing. ac.?—plur. ac.?—sing. voc.?—plur. voc.?—sing. ab.?—plur. ab.? What terminations are the same in different cases?

How must you decline a substantive of the first declension? Decline, with the English of every case, the substantives which follow Rule II. on termination.*

* Questions, as in the inflection of *penna*, to be put on as many of these substantives, as the capacity of the pupil seems to require. The exercise of *writing* a few of the substantives, will serve to impress their inflection with greater precision, on the memory. The English of the cases should be prescribed as to be adapted, sometimes to the definite, and sometimes to the indefinite, article.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1st Example. GE'NER, (son-in-law.)

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> , Gē'ner,	<i>Nom.</i> , Gen'eri,
<i>Gen.</i> , Gen'éri,	<i>Gen.</i> , Genērō'rum,
<i>Dat.</i> , Gen'éro,	<i>Dat.</i> , Gen'ëris,
<i>Ac.</i> , Gen'ërum,	<i>Ac.</i> , Gen'ëros,
<i>Voc.</i> , Gē'ner,	<i>Voc.</i> , Gen'éri,
<i>Ab.</i> , Gen'éro :	<i>Ab.</i> , Gen'ëris.

2d. Ā'GER, (field.)

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> , Ā'ger,	<i>Nom.</i> , Ā'gri,
<i>Gen.</i> , Ā'gri,	<i>Gen.</i> , Āgrō'rum,
<i>Dat.</i> , Ā'gro,	<i>Dat.</i> , Ā'gris,
<i>Ac.</i> , Ā'grum,	<i>Ac.</i> , Ā'gros,
<i>Voc.</i> , Ā'ger,	<i>Voc.</i> , Ā'gri,
<i>Ab.</i> , Ā'gro :	<i>Ab.</i> , Ā'gris.

3d. DOM'INUS, (lord.)

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> , Dom'inus,	<i>Nom.</i> , Dom'ini,
<i>Gen.</i> , Dom'ini,	<i>Gen.</i> , Dom'inōrum,
<i>Dat.</i> , Dom'ino,	<i>Dat.</i> , Dom'inis,
<i>Ac.</i> , Dom'inum,	<i>Ac.</i> , Dom'inos,
<i>Voc.</i> , Dom'ine,	<i>Voc.</i> , Dom'ini,
<i>Ab.</i> , Dom'ino :	<i>Ab.</i> , Dom'inis.

4th. REG'NUM, (kingdom.)

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> , Reg'num,	<i>Nom.</i> , Reg'na,
<i>Gen.</i> , Reg'ni,	<i>Gen.</i> , Regnō'rum,
<i>Dat.</i> , Reg'no,	<i>Dat.</i> , Reg'nis,
<i>Ac.</i> , Reg'num,	<i>Ac.</i> , Reg'na,
<i>Voc.</i> , Reg'num,	<i>Voc.</i> , Reg'na,
<i>Ab.</i> , Reg'no :	<i>Ab.</i> , Reg'nis.

RULES ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

GENDER.

RULE. Most substantives of the second declension, which end in *er*, or *us*, are masculine: all those which end in *um* are neuter.

ROOT.

RULE I. Substantives which are declined like *gener*, have the *singular nominative* for their root, and retain it *without change* through all their cases; thus, Nom., *gener*; gen., *generi*, &c.

RULE II. Substantives which are declined like *ager*, take the *singular nominative* for their root, but *change* it in all cases, except the singular vocative, by dropping the letter *e* which precedes *r* final of the nominative; thus, Nom., *ager*; gen., *agri*, &c.

RULE III. Substantives which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*, take for their root all the letters which precede *us* and *um*, the terminations of the singular nominative; thus, Nom., *Dominus*; gen., *domini*: nom., *regnum*; gen., *regni*.

TERMINATION.

RULE I. Substantives of the second declension, terminate, throughout their cases, either like *gener*, *ager*, *dominus*, or *regnum*.

RULE II. The only difference in the terminations of the oblique *singular* cases of substantives of this declension, lyes in the *vocative*. Substantives which end in *er* or in *um*, in the singular nominative, have their vocative like their nominative; thus, Sing. nom., *gener*, *ager*, *regnum*; voc., *gener*,

ager, regnum :—those which end in *us*, have their vocative in *e*; as, *Nom.*, *dominus*; *voc.*, *domine*.

Exception. Proper names which end in *ius*, have their vocative in *i*; as, *Nom.*, *Georgius*; *voc.*, *Georgi*.

RULE III. In the plural number, the difference of termination lyes in the *nom. ac.* and *voc.* cases. In substantives which end in *er* or in *us*, in the sing. *nom.*, the plur. *nom.* and *voc.*, end in *i*, and the acc. in *os*; thus, plur. *nom.* and *voc.*, *generi, agri, domini*; *ac.*, *generos, agros, dominos*. In substantives which end in *um*, the plur. *nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*, are alike, and end in *a*: thus, plur. *nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*, *regna*.

RULE IV. To decline a substantive of the second declension, observe, by the terminations of its sing. *nom.* and *gen.*, what example it resembles; then find the root, and add the terminations, by the rules which the example indicates.

Substantives to be declined like *gener*: *Pū'ēr*, a boy; *Pres'bŷter*, an elder; *Ar'mĭger*, an armor-bearer: like *ager*, *A'per*, a wild boar; *Ar'bĭter*, a judge; *Col'uber*, a serpent: like *dominus*, *Ven'tus*, the wind; *Fō'cus*, the hearth; *Rō'gus*, a funeral pile: like *regnum*, *Bel'lum*, war; *Tem'plum*, a temple; *Ju'gum*, a yoke.

Recapitulation.

What is the first example of the second declension? Decline it, with the English of the cases. Where do you find *genero*?—*gener*?—*generum*?—*generi*?—*generos*?—*generis*?—*generorum*? Compare the singular and the plural cases of *gener*, throughout, in this manner: Nominative case, singular, *gener*: plural, *generi*. Genitive case, singular, *generi*: plural, *generorum*; &c. What cases of *gener* are alike? What is the root of substantives like *gener*? Does the root undergo a change, in any of the cases? Spell the

root of *gener*. How do substantives of the second declension terminate, throughout their cases? Recite the terminations of *gener* throughout. Where do you find the termination *er*?—*i*?—*o*?—*um*?—*orum*?—*is*?—*os*? What is the termination of the sing. ab.?—of the plur. ab.?—of the sing. voc.?—of the plur. voc.?—of the sing. ac.?—of the plur. ac.?—of the sing. dat.?—of the plur. dat.?—of the sing. gen.?—of the plur. gen.?—of the sing. nom.?—of the plur. nom.? How do you decline a substantive of the second declension? Decline *puer* with the English of the cases? Where do you find *presbyteris*?—*presbyteri*?—*presbyteros*?—*presbyterorum*?—*presbtero*?—*presbyter*?—*presbyterum*? What is the singular ablative of *armiger*?—the sing. nom.?—sing. voc.?—sing. gen.?—sing. ac.?—sing. dat.?—plur. nom.?—plur. ab.?—plur. gen.?—plur. voc.?—plur. dat.?—plur. ac.?

The above questions to be put on the 2d, 3d, and 4th examples, and on the substantives which are prescribed as to be declined like them.

Where lyes the only difference in the terminations of the oblique singular cases of substantives of the second declension? In substantives which end in *er* or in *um*, in the sing. nom., what does the vocative resemble? Mention examples. What is the sing. voc. of substantives which end in *us*, in the sing. nom.? Give an example. Where does the difference of the plural terminations lye? How do those cases end, in substantives which end in *er* or in *us*, in the sing. nom.? Give examples. How do those cases end, in substantives which end in *um*, in the sing. nom.? Mention an example.

Recite the rule on the gender of substantives of the second declension. Of what gender are *gener*, *ager*, and *dominus*? Of what gender is *regnum*?

Compare the terminations of the first and second declensions, throughout their numbers and cases, in the following manner:

Sing. num., nom. case, 1st declension, *a*: 2d, *er*, *us*, or *um*.

"	"	gen.	"	"	"	<i>e</i> :	"	<i>i</i> .
"	"	dat.	&c.					

THIRD DECLENSION.

1st Example. RU'PES, (rock.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Ru'pes,	N., Ru'pes,
G., Ru'pis,	G., Ru'pium,
D., Ru'pi,	D., Ru'pibus,
Ac., Ru'pem,	Ac., Ru'pes,
V., Ru'pes,	V., Ru'pes,
Ab., Ru'pe :	Ab., Ru'pibus.

2d. SEDĪ'LE, (seat.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Sēdī'le,	N., Sēdil'ia,
G., Sēdī'lis,	G., Sēdil'ium,
D., Sēdī'li,	D., Sēdil'ibus,
Ac., Sēdī'le,	Ac., Sēdil'ia,
V., Sēdī'le,	V., Sēdil'ia,
Ab., Sēdī'li :	Ab., Sēdil'ibus.

3d. CŌ'LOK, (color.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Cō'lor,	N., Cōlō'res,
G., Cōlō'ris,	G., Cōlō'rum,
D., Cōlō'ri,	D., Cōlor'ibus,
Ac., Cōlō'rem,	Ac., Cōlō'res,
V., Cō'lor,	V., Cōlō'res,
Ab., Cōlō're :	Ab., Cōlor'ibus.

4th. SER'MO, (speech.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Ser'mo,	N., Sermō'nes,
G., Sermō'nis,	G., Sermō'num,
D., Sermō'ni,	D., Sermon'ibus,
Ac., Sermō'nem,	Ac., Sermō'nes,
V., Ser'mo,	V., Sermō'nes,
Ab., Sermō'ne :	Ab., Sermon'ibus.

5th. *Æ'tas*, (age.)

<i>SING.</i>	<i>PLUR.</i>
<i>N.</i> , <i>Æ'tas</i> ,	<i>N.</i> , <i>Ætā'tes</i> ,
<i>G.</i> , <i>Ætā'tis</i> ,	<i>G.</i> , <i>Ætā'tum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> , <i>Ætā'ti</i> ,	<i>D.</i> , <i>Ætat'ibus</i> ,
<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Ætā'tem</i> ,	<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Ætā'tes</i> ,
<i>V.</i> , <i>Æ'tas</i> ,	<i>V.</i> , <i>Ætā'tes</i> ,
<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Ætā'te</i> :	<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Ætat'ibus</i> .

6th. *Caput*, (head.)

<i>SING.</i>	<i>PLUR.</i>
<i>N.</i> , <i>Cā'put</i> ,	<i>N.</i> , <i>Cap'ita</i> ,
<i>G.</i> , <i>Cap'itis</i> ,	<i>G.</i> , <i>Cap'itum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> , <i>Cap'iti</i> ,	<i>D.</i> , <i>Cāpit'ibus</i> ,
<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Cā'put</i> ,	<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Cap'ita</i> ,
<i>V.</i> , <i>Cā'put</i> ,	<i>V.</i> , <i>Cap'ita</i> ,
<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Cap'ite</i> :	<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Cāpit'ibus</i> .

7th. *Corpus*, (body.)

<i>SING.</i>	<i>PLUR.</i>
<i>N.</i> , <i>Cor'pus</i> ,	<i>N.</i> , <i>Cor'pōra</i> ,
<i>G.</i> , <i>Cor'pōris</i> ,	<i>G.</i> , <i>Cor'pōrum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> , <i>Cor'pōri</i> ,	<i>D.</i> , <i>Corpor'ibus</i> ,
<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Cor'pus</i> ,	<i>Ac.</i> , <i>Cor'pōra</i> ,
<i>V.</i> , <i>Cor'pus</i> ,	<i>V.</i> , <i>Cor'pōra</i> ,
<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Cor'pōre</i> :	<i>Ab.</i> , <i>Corpor'ibus</i> .

RULES ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENDER.

RULE I. Substantives which end in the following terminations in the sing. nom., are of the *masculine* gender : *o*, *n*, *cr*, *or*, *os* ; as, *Ser'mo*, *pec'ten*, (comb,) *an'ser*, (goose,) *co'lor*, *flos*, (flower.)

Except substantives ending in *io*, and signifying things *without body*, and substantives which end in *do* and *go*,—all which are *feminine*; and substantives ending in *men*, which are *neuter*.

RULE II. Substantives are of the *feminine* gender, which have the following terminations in the sing. nom.: *as, es*, (when it is regulated by Rule I. on *root*), *is, s*, (preceded by a consonant,) and *x*; thus, *Ætas, rupes, auris* (ear,) *trabs* (beam,) *vox* (voice.)

RULE III. Substantives of the *neuter* gender have the following terminations in the sing. nom.: *a, e, c, l, ar, ur, us, t*; as *Poë'ma*, (poem,) *mā're*, (sea,) *hā'lec*, (pickle,) *an'imal*, (animal,) *çal'car*, (spur,) *mur'mur*, (noise,) *cor'pus*, *caput*.

ROOT.

RULE I. Substantives like *rupes* and *sedile*, have the same number of syllables in the sing. genitive, as in the nominative. Their *root* is the syllable which precedes the termination of the sing. nom., continued, *without change*, through all the cases. Substantives of this class terminate in *e, es, or is*, in the sing. nom.; thus, *Sing. nom.*, *Mā're, nū'bes*, (cloud,) *auris*; *gen.*, *mā'ris, nū'bis, au'ris*; *dat.*, *mā'ri, &c.*

OBSERVATION. Substantives which do not end in *e, es, or is*, have *one, and*, sometimes, though rarely, *two syllables more* in the genitive, than in the nominative, and adopt various roots, according to the following rules:

RULE II. Some substantives adopt for their root, the *whole word* which forms the sing. nom., and continue it, *without change*, through all their cases,

Substantives of this class have the following terminations in their sing. nom. : *e, l, ar, er, or, ur* ; thus, *Sing. nom.*, Hā'lec, sal, (salt,) cal'car, an'ser, cōlor, mur'mur ; *gen.*, hālē'cis, sāl'is, calcā'ris, an'sēris, cōlō'ris, mur'mūris ; *dat.*, hālē'ci, &c.

RULE III. Some substantives *add a letter* to the nominative, when they adopt it as their root : they are distinguished by the terminations *a* and *o*, in the sing. nom. ; thus, *Sing. nom.*, Ser'mo, poē'ma, *gen.*, sermō'nis, poēm'ātis ; *dat.*, sermō'ni, &c.

RULE IV. In some substantives, the nominative, when it is adopted as the root, undergoes *a change of one letter* in its final syllable :—1st, of the *last* letter : this change takes place in substantives which have the following terminations of the sing. nom. : *as, æs, aus, ax, ix, ns, os* ; thus, *Sing. nom.*, Æ'tas, æs, (brass,) laus, (praise,) for'nax, (furnace,) per'dix, (partridge,) pā'rens, (parent,) flos ; *gen.*, ætā'tis, æ'ris, lau'dis, fornā'cis, perdi'cis, pāren'tis, flō'ris ; *dat.*, ætā'ti, &c.—2d. Some substantives comprehended under this rule, make the change on the *penultimate* letter, (last letter but one,) of the final syllable of the nominative : these substantives terminate as follows, in the sing. nom. : *men, ut* ; thus, *Sing. nom.*, Car'men, (verse,) cā'put ; *gen.*, car'mīnis, cap'itis ; *dat.*, car'mīni, &c.

RULE V. In some substantives, there is *an entire change* of the final syllable of the nominative. The terminations of the sing. nom. of such substantives, are, *ex* and *ut* ; thus, *Sing. nom.*, op'ifex, (workman,) cor'pus ; *gen.*, opif'icis, cor'pōris ; *dat.*, opif'ici, &c.

TERMINATION.

RULE I. Substantives of the third declension terminate like the examples in all their cases except the *sing. nom.*, which has a great variety of terminations.

OBSERV. The difference of termination in the *oblique* cases, lies in the *sing. ac.*, *voc.*, and *ab.*, and in the *plur. nom.*, *gen.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*

RULE II. The *sing. ac.* and *voc.* of neuter substantives, have the same termination as the *nom.*; thus, *Sing. nom.*, *Sedile*, *caput*, *corpus*; *ac.* and *voc.*, *sedile*, *caput*, *corpus*.

RULE III. Most substantives of the third declension have the letter *e* for the termination of their *sing. ab.*; thus, *Rupe*, *colore*, *corpore*, &c.

Exceptions. Substantives which end in *e*, and some neuters which end in *al* and *ar*, in the *sing. nom.*, have *i* for the termination of their *ab.*; thus, *Sing. nom.*, *Sedile*, *animal*, (*animal*,) *calcar*; *ab.*, *sedili*, *animāli*, *calcari*.

RULE IV. Neuter substantives which terminate in *e* in the *sing. ab.*, have the letter *a* for the termination of their *plur. nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*; thus, *Sing. ab.*, *Capite*, *corpore*; *plur. nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*, *capita*, *corpora*.

RULE V. Those which have *i* in the *sing. ab.*, have *ia* in the *plur. nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*; thus, *Sing. ab.*, *Sedili*, *animali*; *plur. nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*, *sedilia*, *animālia*.

RULE VI. Most substantives which end in *e*, in the *sing. ab.*, have *um* for the termination of the *plur. gen.*; thus, *Sing. ab.*, *colore*, *sermone*, *corpore*; *plur. gen.*, *colorum*, *sermonum*, *corporum*.

Exceptions. Some substantives which end in *es* and *is*, in the sing. nom., have *ium*, as the termination of the plur. gen.; thus, *Sing. nom.*, *Rupes*, *auris*; *plur. gen.*, *rupium*, *aurium*.

RULE VII. Substantives which, in the sing. ab., terminate in the letter *i*, and those which may terminate either in *i* or *e*, have the plur. gen. in *ium*; thus, *Sing. ab.*, *Sedili*, *turre*, or *turri*, (tower;) *plur. gen.*, *sedilium*, *turrium*.

RULE VIII. To decline a substantive of the third declension, observe, 1st, by its termination, to what *gender* it belongs: 2d, in the same way, under what rule on *root* it is classed: 3d, by what rules on *termination* it is regulated; thus, *Nū'bes*, (cloud,) ends in *es*, and belongs, therefore, to the *feminine* gender, is classed under Rule I. on *root*, and is regulated by the exception under Rule VI. on *termination*.

Substantives to be declined like the 1st example: *Nubes*, *auris*: like the 2d, *mare*, *ré'te*, (net:) like the 3d, *timor*, (fear,) *ardor*, (heat:) like the 4th, *drā'co*, (dragon,) *ratio*: like the 5th, *flos*, *fofnax*: like the 6th, *carmen*: like the 7th, *vul'nus*, (wound;) *gen.*, *vul'nérís*.

Decline the following, by the rules on gender, root, and termination: *Pecten*, *anser*, *poema*, *halec*, *animal*, *calcar*, *murmur*, *as*, [*neut.*,] *laus*, [*fem.*,] *perdix*, *opifex*, [*mas.*] *vox*, *turris*, *parens*, [*com.*]

Recapitulation.

What is the first example of the third declension? Recite the rule on the gender of substantives ending in *es*. Of what gender is *nubes*? Recite the rule on root, which regulates substantives ending in *es*. Spell the root of *rupes*. By what rule on termination is this example regulated? Decline *rupes*. Where do you find *rupi*?—*rupes*?—*rupem*?—*rupi*?—*rupis*?—*rupibus*?—*rupium*? What cases are alike? Recite the terminations of *rupes*. How often and where do

you find *es*?—*ibus*? Decline *nubes* with the English of the cases. What is the sing. gen. of *nubes*?—plur. gen.?—sing. ab.?—sing. dat.?—pl. ac.?—sing. ac.? Where do you find *aúribus*?—*aures*?—*aurium*?—*aure*?—*aurem*?—*auri*?—*auris*?

What is the second example of the third declension? Recite the rule on the gender of substantives which end in *e*. Of what gender is *sedile*? What is the rule for its root? Spell the root of *sedile*. What rules on termination regulate the sing. ac. and voc. of *sedile*?—the sing. ab.?—the plur. nom., ac., and voc.?—the plur. gen.? Decline *sedile* with the English of the cases. Recite its terminations. In what cases do you find the same termination? Decline *mare*. Where do you find *mare*?—*maris*?—*mari*?—*maria*?—*maribus*?—*marium*? What is the sing. ab. of *rete*?—plur. ab.?—sing. voc.?—plur. voc.?—sing. ac.?—plur. ac.?—sing. dat.?—plur. dat.?—sing. gen.?—plur. gen.?—plur. nom.?

What is the third example of the third declension? Recite the rule on termination, for substantives which end in *or*. Of what gender is *color*? What is the rule on root, for substantives which end in *or*? Spell the root of *color*. By what rules on termination are the cases of this example regulated? Decline *color*. Where do you find *color*?—*colores*?—*coloris*?—*colorum*?—*colori*?—*coloribus*?—*colorem*?—*colore*? Recite the terminations of *color*. Decline *ardor*, with the English of the cases. What is the plur. nom.?—the sing. nom.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. gen.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. ab.?—the sing. ab.? Decline *timor*. What cases are alike?

What is the fourth example of the third declension? What is the rule on the gender of substantives which end in *o*? What is the gender of *sermo*? What is the rule for the root of substantives which end in *o*? Spell the root of *sermo*. By what rules on termination are the cases of *sermo* regulated? Decline *sermo*. What is the sing. ab.?—the plur. nom.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. gen.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. nom.?—the plur. ab.? Recite the terminations of *sermo*. Decline *draco*, with the English of the cases. Where do you find *draconibus*?—*dracone*?—*dracones*?—*draco*?—*draconum*?—*draconem*?—*draconi*?

draconis? Decline *ratio*. Mention the difference of termination, between the sing. and plur. nom., gen., dat., ac., voc., ab.

What is the fifth example of the third declension? What is the rule for the gender of substantives which end in *as*? What is the gender of *ætas*? What is the rule on the root of substantives which end in *as*? Spell the root of *ætas*. What are the rules on termination which apply to *ætas*? Decline *ætas*. Where do you find *ætatis*?—*ætates*?—*ætati*?—*ætatibus*?—*ætatem*?—*ætate*? Recite the terminations. What terminations are the same? Decline *flos*, with the English of the cases, mentioning first the rules of gender and of root by which it is regulated? What is the sing. gen.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. ab.?—the plur. ab.? Decline *fornax*, mentioning first the rules on gender and root, which apply to it. What cases are the same? Where do you find *fornacis*?—*fornacem*?—*fornace*?—*fornaci*?

What is the sixth example of substantives of the third declension? What rule on gender applies to substantives which end in *t*? What is the gender of *caput*? Under what rule on root are substantives classed, which end in *t*? Spell the root of *caput*. What are the rules of termination which apply to the cases of *caput*? Decline *caput*. Where do you find *capite*?—*caput*?—*capiti*?—*capitis*?—*capitibus*?—*capita*?—*capitum*? Recite the terminations of *caput*. What terminations are alike? Decline *carmen*, with the English of the cases. What is the sing. ab.?—nom.?—voc.?—gen.?—ac.?—dat.?—plur. ab.?—nom.?—voc.?—gen.?—ac.?—dat.? What cases are alike?

What is the seventh example of the third declension? What rule on gender includes substantives which end in *us*? What is the gender of *corpus*? What rule on root applies to substantives which end in *us*? Spell the root of *corpus*. What are the rules of termination which apply to the cases of *corpus*? Decline *corpus*. What is the plur. ab.?—the sing. nom.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. gen.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. nom.?—the sing. ab.? Recite the terminations of *corpus*. What terminations are alike? Decline *vulnus*, with the English, mentioning first the rules

on gender and root, which apply to it. Where do you find *vulneribus*?—*vulnus*?—*vulnera*?—*vulneris*?—*vulneri*?—*vulnerum*?

[Similar questions to be put on the promiscuous examples *Pecten*, &c. under Rule VIII. on *termination*.]

Compare the terminations of the first, second, and third declensions, in the following way: *Sing. num., nom. case*, 1st declension, *a*; 2d, *er, us, or um*; 3d, *various*: *gen.*; 1st, *e*; 2d, *i*; 3d, *is*: *dat., &c.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

1st Example. FRUC'TUS, (fruit.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Fruc'tus,	N., Fruc'tus,
G., Fruc'tus,	G., Fruc'tium,
D., Fruc'tui,	D., Fruc'tibus,
Ac., Fruc'tum,	Ac., Fruc'tus,
V., Fruc'tus,	V., Fruc'tus,
Ab., Fruc'tu :	Ab., Fruc'tibus.

2d. COR'NU, (horn.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Cor'nu,	N., Cor'nua,
G., Cor'nu,	G., Cor'nium,
D., Cor'nu,	D., Cor'nibus,
Ac., Cor'nu,	Ac., Cor'nua,
V., Cor'nu,	V., Cor'nua,
Ab., Cor'nu :	Ab., Cor'nibus.

RULES ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

GENDER.

RULE. Most substantives of this declension,

which end in *us*, are of the *masculine* gender :—all those which end in *u*, are *neuter*.

ROOT.

RULE. The root of substantives of the fourth declension, is composed of as many letters as precede the terminations *us* and *u*, of the sing. nom. ; and this root continues, unchanged, throughout the cases, as in *fructus* and *cornu*.

TERMINATION.

RULE I. Substantives of the fourth declension, have the same terminations, throughout their cases, as *fructus* and *cornu*.

OBSERVATION. The difference between the singular terminations of these examples, extends throughout the cases : the difference of the plural terminations, occurs in the nom., ac., and voc.

RULE II. Substantives which end in *us* in the sing. nom., have a different termination for every singular case, except the gen. and voc. ; thus, *Sing. num.*, nom., *Fructus* ; *gen.*, *fructus* ; *dat.*, *fructui* ; *ac.*, *fructum* ; *voc.*, *fructus* ; *ab.*, *fructu*.

RULE III. Substantives which end in *u*, have the same termination throughout their singular cases ; thus, *Sing. num.*, nom., *Cornu* ; *gen.*, *cornu* ; *dat.*, *cornu* ; *ac.*, *cornu* ; *voc.*, *cornu* ; *ab.*, *cornu*.

Note. Substantives which have the same termination throughout their cases, are called *indeclinable* ; because they undergo *no change by declension*. *Cornu*, and all substantives which resemble it, are therefore said to be *indeclinable* in the singular number.

RULE IV. Both *fructus* and *cornu* have the same terminations in their plur. ac. and voc., as in their

nom. ; but the latter is distinguished from the former, by the termination *ua*, in all those cases ; thus, *Plur. nom., ac., and voc., fructus, cornua.*

RULE V. To decline a substantive of the fourth declension, observe its gender, and vary its terminations accordingly, paying attention to the rule on root ; thus *Vultus*, (countenance,) ends in *us*, is of the masculine gender, has the letters *vult* for its root, and is regulated by Rules I. and II. on termination ; and is therefore declined as follows : *Sing. nom., vultus ; gen., &c.*

Substantives to be declined like fructus : Vultus ; Luctus, grief ; Saltus, a forest :—like cornu : Genu, the knee ; Tonitru, thunder.

Recapitulation.

What is the first example of the fourth declension ? Recite the rule on the gender of substantives of the fourth declension ? Of what gender is *fructus* ? Recite the rule on the root of substantives of this declension. Spell the root of *fructus*. In what cases do you find a difference between the terminations of *fructus* and *cornu* ? What are the rules on termination, which apply to *fructus* ? Decline *fructus*, with the English of the cases. Where do you find *fructus* ?—*fructuum* ?—*fructui* ?—*fructibus* ?—*fructum* ?—*fructu* ? Recite the terminations of *fructus*. What terminations are alike ? Decline *vultus* with the English of the cases. What is the sing. ab. ?—plur. ab. ?—sing. voc. ?—plur. voc. ?—sing. ac. ?—plur. ac. ?—sing. dat. ?—plur. dat. ?—sing. gen. ?—plur. gen. ?—sing. nom. ?—plur. nom. ? Decline *luctus*. Where do you find *luctibus* ?—*luctu* ?—*luctus* ?—*luctum* ?—*luctui* ?—*luctuum* ? Decline *saltus*. What cases are alike ? What is the sing. dat. ?—ab. ?—ac. ?

What is the second example of the fourth declension ? Recite the rule on the gender of substantives of this declension. Of what gender is *cornu* ? Recite the rule on the root of substantives of this declension. What is the root of *cornu* ? What are the rules on termination, which apply to *cor-*

nu? Decline *cornu* with the English of the cases. What are those substantives called, which have the same termination throughout? What is the sing. num. of *cornu* said to be? What is the plur. nom. of *cornu*?—the sing. nom.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. gen.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. ab.?—the sing. ab.? Recite the terminations of *cornu*. Where and how often do you find *ua*?—*ibus*?—*um*?—*u*? Decline *genu*. What cases are alike? What is the plur. gen.? Decline *tonitru* with the English of the cases. Where do you find *tonitru*?—*tonitrua*?—*tonitribus*?—*tonitrium*?

Compare the terminations of the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th declensions, as follows: *Sing. num., nom. case, 1st declension, a*; 2d, *er, us, or um*; 3d, *various*; 4th, *us, or u*: gen., 1st, *a*; 2d, *i*; 3d, *is*; 4th, *us*: dat., &c.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

<i>Example.</i> RES, (thing.)	
SING.	PLUR.
N., Res,	N., Res,
G., Rē'i,	G., Rē'rum,
D., Rē'i,	D., Rē'bus,
Ac., Rem,	Ac., Res,
V., Res,	V., Res,
Ab., Re:	Ab., Rē'bus.

RULES ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

GENDER.

RULE. Substantives of the fifth declension are of the *feminine* gender.

ROOT.

RULE. The root of substantives of the fifth de-

clension, is formed of the letter or letters which precede *es*, the termination of the sing. nom., and undergoes no change; thus. Sing. nom., *Rēs*; gen. *reī*, &c.

TERMINATION.

RULE I. Substantives of the fifth declension, have the same terminations throughout their cases, as *res*.

RULE II. Many substantives of this declension, have no plur. gen., dat., nor ab.; and some have no plur. num.; as *Glā'cies*, (ice); *fī'des*, (faith.)

RULE III. To decline a substantive of this declension, add to the root of the word, the terminations of *res*.

Substantives to be declined like res: *Fī'des*; *Sē'ries*, an order; *Fā'cies*, the face; *Spē'cies*, appearance; *Glā'cies*.

Recapitulation.

What is the example of the fifth declension? Recite the rule on the gender of substantives of this declension. Of what gender is *res*? Recite the rule on the root of substantives of this declension. What is the root of *res*? Decline *res*. Where do you find *re*?---*rebus*?---*res*?---*rem*?---*ret*? What is the plur. nom.?---sing. nom.?---plur. gen.?---sing. gen.?---plur. dat.?---sing. dat.?---plur. ac.?---sing. ac.?---plur. voc.?---sing. voc.?---plur. ab.?---sing. ab.? Recite the terminations of *res*. What terminations are alike? What is the gender of *fides*? How do you decline a substantive of the fifth declension? Recite the rule on the root of substantives of the fifth declension. Spell the root of *fides*. What rule on termination applies to *fides*? Decline *fides* with the English of the cases. What is the sing. ab.?---the plur. nom.?---the sing. voc.?---the plur. gen.?---the sing. ac.?---the plur. dat.?---the sing. dat.?---the plur. ac.?---the sing. gen.?---the plur. voc.?---the sing. nom.?---the plur. ab.? What is the gender of *series*? Spell the root of *series*. Decline *series*. Where do you find *series*?---*serie*?---*seriet*?---

seriem ? What is the gender of *facies* ?—its root ? Decline *facies*. How many times, and in what cases, do you find *facies* ?—*faciet* ? Decline *species* with the English of the cases. What cases are alike ? What rule on termination applies to *glacies* ? Decline *glacies*. Where do you find *glacies* ?—*glacie* ?—*glaciem* ?—*glaciet* ?

* Compare the terminations of all the declensions, in this manner : Sing. num., nom. case, 1st declension, *a* ; 2d, *er*, *us*, or *um* ; 3d, *various* ; 4th, *us*, or *u* ; 5th, *es* : gen., 1st, *æ* ; 2d, *i* ; 3d, *is* ; 4th, *us* ; 5th, *ei* : dat., &c.

In what declensions, genders, numbers, and cases, do you find the termination *a* ?—*o* ?—*e* ?—*u* ?—*er* ?—*um* ?—*us* ?—*es* ?—*am* ?—*em* ?—*æ* ?—*i* ?—*ui* ?—*ei* ?—*is* ?—*ebus* ?—*ibus* ?—*as* ?—*os* ?—*erum* ?—*ium* ?—*orum* ?—*arum* ?—*ia* ?

What is the termination of the fifth declension, plur. num., ab. case ?—first decl., sing. nom. ?—fourth dec., plur. voc. ?—second dec., sing. gen. ?—third dec., plur. ac. ?—fifth dec., sing. dat. ?—first dec., plur. ac. ?—fourth dec., sing. dat. ?—second dec., plur. ac. ?—third dec., sing. ab. ?—fifth dec., plur. voc., &c.

GENERAL RULES

ON THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE I. Proper substantives, being the names of individuals, have seldom a plural number.

RULE II. The declension to which a substantive belongs, is ascertained by its terminations in the sing. nom. and gen. Accordingly, all substantives which end in *a*, in the sing. nom., and *æ*, in the sing. gen., are recognised as belonging to the *first* declension ; all that end in *er*, *us*, or *um*, in the sing. nom.,

* The lessons contained in this, and the two following paragraphs, should be prescribed again and again ; untill the pupil has acquired a perfect readiness in answering the questions.

and in *i*, in the sing. gen., as belonging to the *second*; all that end in *is*, in the sing. gen., as belonging to the *third*; all that end in *us*, in the sing. nom. and gen., as belonging to the *fourth*; and all that end in *es*, in the sing. nom., and in *ei*, in the sing. gen., as belonging to the *fifth*.

Explan. If every declension had a termination different from that of another, in the sing. nom., this case would, of itself, be a sufficiently distinct characteristic of the declensions. But some terminations of the sing. nom., are common to several declensions; and this case could not, therefore, be given as an invariable characteristic of any declension; thus, we should be very apt to imagine that *poema* is of the first declension, because it ends in *a*, in the sing. nom.: we might naturally think that *nubes* is of the fifth, because it ends in *es*; or that *anser* is of the second, because it ends in *er*. To remove this uncertainty, we take the sing. gen., along with the nom.; and, as that case has a different termination in every declension, we can tell, at once, to what declension a substantive belongs. Take the above examples, as an illustration. *Poema* has in the sing. gen. *poematis*, and we recognise it as a substantive of the *third* declension: *nubes* has, in the sing. gen., *nubis*, and is also of the third: *anser* has, in the sing. gen., *anseris*, and belongs, therefore, to the same declension. Another reason why the sing. gen. is selected as the characteristic of the declensions, is, that, in every substantive, the genitive contains a key to the inflection of most of the other oblique cases; for whatever letters constitute the root of the genitive, are also the root, of every oblique case, except the vocative, when it is the same with the nominative, and the accusative of neut. substantives; thus, Sing. gen., *Pennæ*; dat., *pennæ*; ac., *pennam*, &c.: gen., *domini*; dat., *dominø*; ac., *dominum*, &c.: gen., *sermonis*; dat., *sermoni*; ac., *sermonem*, &c.: gen., *capitis*; dat., *capiti*; ac., *caput*, &c.: gen., *fructu*; dat., *fructui*; ac., *fructum*, &c.: gen., *rei*; dat., *rei*; ac., *rem*; &c. To designate the declension of substantives, it is thought sufficient to mention their sing. nom. and gen.; thus, instead of saying *penna* is a substantive of the first declension, we say *penna, pennæ*; or, leaving out the root in the gen., because it is the same as in the nom., we express it in this way, *penna,—æ*.

RULE III. The ac. and voc. of neuter substantives, are, in both numbers, the same with the nom. ; and, in the plural, all these cases end in the letter *a* : thus, Sing. nom., ac., and voc., *regnum*, *sedile*, *caput*, *corpus* ; plur. nom., ac., and voc., *regna*, *sedilia*, *capita*, *corpora*, *cornua*.

RULE IV. All substantives have their plur. nom. and voc. alike ; and most have the same cases alike, in the sing. num. ; thus, Plur. nom. and voc., *pennæ*, *generi*, *agri*, *rupes*, *fructus*, *res* : sing. nom. and voc., *penna*, *gener*, *ager*, *rupes*, &c.

RULE V. The plur. dat. and ab. of all substantives, are the same ; thus, plur. dat. and ab., *pennis*, *generis*, *rupibus*, *fructibus*, &c.

Recapitulation.

Why have proper substantives no plur. num. ? How do you ascertain the declension to which a substantive belongs ? What is the mark of the first declension ?---of the second ?---of the third ?---of the fourth ?---of the fifth ? Why should not the sing. nom. be of itself a sufficiently distinct characteristic of the declensions ? Give examples. Why is the sing. gen. taken as the characteristic of the declensions ? Give examples. Mention another reason why the genitive is selected as the characteristic of the declensions. Give examples. What is the common way of designating the declension of a substantive ? What cases in neuter substantives, are the same with the nom. ? How do all these cases end in the plural ? Give examples. What two cases are always alike in the plur., and, sometimes, in the sing. ? Give examples. What two oblique cases are the same in all substantives ? Give examples.

Mention the declensions to which the following substantives belong : *Comē'ta*,--æ ; *ā'cles*,--et ; *lō'cus*,--i ; *mō'tus*,--us ; *ig'nis*,--is ; *cā'ries*,--et ; *bū'bo*,--nis ; *fem'ina*,--æ ; *ar'miger*,--i ; *mā'nus*,--us.

SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Explan. The word *syntax* is derived from a Greek word which signifies to *arrange*, and is applied to the third part of grammar, which relates to the *arrangement* of words, as used in speaking and writing. The difference between syntax and etymology, is, that the latter regards words, considered *singly*, with reference to the changes which they undergo : the former regards words, as *arranged*, or combined, by speaking or by writing, and contains the application of the changes exhibited by etymology.

The first department of syntax, is that which relates to the arrangement of words, in *phrases*. The word *phrase* signifies *expression*, but is commonly used to denote a *form*, or manner, of expression. A phrase consists of two or more words which are dependent on one another, both in *signification* and *form* ; as *Mū'sa Thālī'a*, (the muse Thalia.)

Phrases which consist of substantives, are formed by the following rules :

RULE I. When two or more substantives signify the *same* person or thing, they are used in the *same* case ; as, *Sing. nom., Musa Thalia.*

Note. Such substantives are said to *agree* in case.

Recapitulation.—The syntax-rules on substantives should be recapitulated in the following way.—What is the rule of syntax for substantives which, &c. ? Give an example. How will you parse the latter substantive when, &c. ? Give an example. Parse the example.

Exercises on the above Rule.

Method of parsing.—*Explan.* The word *parsing* is derived from a Latin word signifying *part*, and is used as the grammatical term for stating the *parts* of speech, (classes of words,) with all their characteristics of inflection, &c.—Parsing should be performed both etymologically and syntactically, as in the following specimen.

[No *vocabulary* will be required in performing the exercises subjoined to this and the subsequent rules of syntax, if at-

tention is paid to the following directions :—1st, The meaning of the substantive will intimate whether it is of the *common* or of the *proper* class : 2d, The *termination* found in the lesson, will ascertain the *declension* of the substantive, and consequently its *gender* and *root*, and the *terminations* of all its cases, according to the rules on the declension to which it belongs. 3d, The *English* of the cases, when it is not stated, is to be given by their respective *signs*. 4th, Sometimes, the *English* of a case, as expressed in the lesson, will lead to the *number*, the *gender*, and the *declension*, of the substantive, as well as to its *class of signification*, as common or proper.]

Specimen. Sing. nom., MUSA THALIA.—Question.* What part of speech is *musa*? *Answer.* A substantive. *Q. Why?* *A.* Because it is the name of a person. *Q. From what do substantives receive their name?* *A.* From their being used chiefly to express substances. *Q. Is musa a common or a proper substantive?* *A.* A common substantive. *Q. Why?* *A.* Because it is common to all the muses. *Q. What are the sing. nom. and gen. of musa?* *A.* Musa, musæ. *Q. Of what declension is it?* *A.* Of the first. *Q. By what rule?* *A.* By the second General Rule on the declension of substantives, which says, &c. *Q. What is the gender of musa?* *A.* Feminine. *Q. By what rule?* *A.* By the rule on the gender of substantives of the first declension, which says, &c. *Q. What is gender?* *A.* Gender is the distinction of sex. *Q. What does the feminine gender signify, and what does it include?* *A.* It signifies female, and includes all substantives for which we may substitute the word *she*. *Q. What is the root of musa?* *A.* The letters *mus*. *Q. By what rule?* *A.* By the rule on the root of substantives of the first declension, which says, &c. *Q. What is meant by the root of a word?* *A.* The first part of it. *Q. Why is root so called?* *A.* Because the first

* A mythological explanation of such examples as the above, will not only enable the pupil to understand his lesson more fully, but will make it more interesting to him.

The marks which express the orthoepy, are not used when a word occurs a second time. The scholar, having acquired the correct pronunciation, at first, does not need a repetition of the marks which lead to it.

syllable or syllables of a word, are, as it were, the root from which spring the final letters. Q. What are the terminations of *musa*? A. Sing. nom., *a*; gen., *æ*, &c. Q. By what rule? A. By Rule I. on the terminations of substantives of the first declension, which says, &c. Q. Decline *musa*. A. Sing. nom., *musa*; gen., &c. Q. By what rule do you decline *musa*? A. By Rule II. on the terminations of substantives of the first declension, which says, &c. Q. Of which number is *musa*? A. Of the singular. Q. Why? A. Because it expresses no more than one object. Q. What is the use of the word *number*? A. It is used to classify substantives according to the number of objects which they represent. Q. What does the word *singular* mean, and how is it applied? A. It means *single*, and is applied to substantives which express no more than one object. Q. In what case is *musa*? A. In the nominative? Q. Why? A. Because it expresses merely the name of an object, and terminates in the letter *a*, which is characteristic of the sing. nom., first declension. Q. What does the word *case* signify? A. Those modifications, &c. (see p. 20.) Q. What is the term *case* derived from? A. From, &c. (see p. 20.) Q. Illustrate this derivative. A. The nominative case, &c. (see p. 20.) Q. What is the derivation of the *nom.* case? A. The word *nominative*, &c. (see p. 20.) Q. What does this case express, and what is its sign? A. This case, &c. (see p. 20.)

To the preceding questions should sometimes be added the following on the easier derivatives:—What English word is derived from this Latin one? Thus, the English word *muse*, is derived from the Latin word *musa*.

After a few lessons, the questions may be restricted to the following: What part of speech? Common or proper? Of what declension?—gender?—number?—case? Why?—The last question extends to case only, is applied to the latter substantive, and should be answered by the rule of syntax.—The declining of the substantive should never be omitted, and should always be performed with reference to the rules on gender, root, and termination.

Pupils should be accustomed, as early as possible, to parse without the assistance of questions, according to the following specimen.

Thalia is a substantive*---of the proper kind,---of the first declension,---of the feminine gender,---of the singular number,---declined by the rules on the root and terminations of substantives of the first decl.: *Sing. nom.*, *Thalia*; *gen.*, *Thaliæ*, &c.—*Thalia* is found in the nominative, because it signifies the same person as *musa*; and Rule I. on the syntax of substantives says, &c.

Lep'īdus—*i* *māgis'ter*—*tri*. *Lep'īde māgis'ter*.
Lepidus *master*.

Lepidum magistrum. *Cic'ēro*--*nīs* *ōrā'tor*--*is*. *Ci*--
Cicero *orator*.

cērō'ni *ōrātō're*. *Ciceronem oratorem*. *Ciceroni*
oratori. *Rom'ulus*—*i* *rex*—*gis*. *Rom'ulo rē'gi*.
Romulus *king*.

Romulum regem. *Romulo rege*. *Singular nom.*,
Nym'pha--*æ* *Ō'pis*--*is*. *Nym'phā Ō'pe*. *Nymphæ*
Nymph *Opis*.

Opis. *Sing. nom.*, *Urbs*--*is* *Rō'ma*--*æ*. *Ur'bem*
 City *Rome*.

Rō'mam. *Urbis Romæ*. *Sing. nom.*, *Nā'vis*--*is*
 Ship

* As parsing is nothing else than a grammatical definition of terms, the parts of speech are uniformly exemplified so as to present the principal distinctions first, and the subordinate ones last. This arrangement, besides being more correct in a logical point of view, possesses a very important practical advantage. If the pupil is allowed to parse a substantive by first mentioning its case, then its number, and then its gender, &c., or if he is not required to observe a fixed order in stating these points, it will be found that, in writing his first Latin exercises, whilst he often uses the right case, he errs in number, gender, or declension. On the other hand, let him, in parsing, descend uniformly from class of signification to declension, from declension to gender, from gender to number, and from number to case; and, as he cannot find the case without a previous reference to gender, number, &c., equal accuracy will be obtained in every department of parsing.

Chīmæ'ra--æ. Nā've Chīmæ'rā. *Sing. voc., Na-*
Chimera.

vis Chimæra. Flū'men--inis Pā'dus--i. Flū'men
River Po.

Pā'dum. Flū'mīni Pado. Grac'chus--i cen'sor--is.
Gracchus censor.

Grac'cho censō're. Gracchi censoris. Lū'cius--i
Lucius

[*sing. voc., see p. 29.*] Pī'so--nis con'sul--is [*mas.*]
Piso consul.

Lū'cium Pisō'nem con'sulem. Lucio Pisoni con-
suli. Lucii Pisonis consulis. Luci Piso consul.

Urbs Athē'næ--ā'rum. Ur'bem Athē'nas. Urbis
Athens.

Athenarum. Urbe Athenis.

RULE II. When two substantives signify *different* things, the latter is found in the *genitive* case ; as, (*Nom.*) Carmen (*gen.*) Thaliæ. The verse of Thalia.

Note. The latter substantive is said to be *governed* by the former.

Exercises.—Ā'mor--is Dē'i. † Āmō'ris Dei. A-
Love, God.

morem Dei.—Lex--gis nātū'ræ. Lē'gi naturæ. Le-
Law, nature.

gis naturæ. Vox--cis hom'inis. † Os--is [*neut.*]
Voice, man. Countenance (of a)

dei. Ripa--æ flū'minis* [*neut.*] Tul'lia--æ fil'ia †
god. Bank. Tullia daughter

† Substantives are thus distinguished, when the pupil must refer to the Appendix, for their gender, root, or terminations.

* The English of the exercises is not subjoined, if it has occurred frequently in some of the preceding lessons.

Ciceronis. Carmen Musæ Thalæ. (*Nom.*) Mœ'-
 nia † urbis Athenarum. (*Plur. nom.*) Ver'ba (*sing.*
 Walls
 Words
nom. --um.) Romuli regis. Săgit'ta--æ nymphæ

Opis. Glō'ria--æ urbis Romæ. Rē'mi navis Chī-
 Glory Oars
 mæ'ræ. Ripæ fluminis Padi. Toga--æ Lucii Pi-
 sonis consulis. Fructu ar'boris † vī'tæ. Rā'diī

tree life. Rays
 sō'lis (*sing. nom., sol †*) lū'minis (*sing. nom., lu-*
 sun
 men) mun'di (*sing. nom. --us.*) Mors--tis Alex-

light world. Death
 andri (*sing. nom. Alexander*) filii † Philippi regis
 Alexander of Philip

Macedoniæ.

Macedonia.

Section II.—Adjectives.

OBSERV. The second class into which nouns are divided, is called *adjectives*.

Explan. The word *adjective* means *added* : it is used for that part of speech, which is added to substantives, to express their *quality* ; thus, when I use the word *fructus*, I mention merely the name of a thing ; but when I add an adjective, and say *bonus* (good) *fructus*, I mention the quality of the substantive *fructus*. *Quality* is that by which we may *distinguish* one thing from another ; as *good, bad, hard, soft, &c.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

1st Example, Bō'NUS,* (good.)

MASCULINE GENDER.†

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nominative case, Bō'nus,

Genitive „ Bō'nī.

Note. All the cases in both numbers of the masc. gen. have the same terminations as *dominus*.

FEMININE GENDER.

SING. NUM.

Nom., Bō'na,

Gen., Bō'næ.

Declined, throughout, like *penna*.

* The marks used in the first, second, and third, parts of this work, have no reference to *quantity* : they regard *orthoepey* only. See p. 12.

† The tabular form of the adjective tends rather to confuse the ideas of a very young learner ; and is not so well adapted to impress on his mind the complete correspondence of the inflection of adjectives to that of substantives. The tabular form cannot be well understood, until after the genders have been studied singly. It is included therefore in the *recapitulation*.

NEUTER GENDER.

SING. NUM.

Nom., Bō'num,

Gen., Bō'ni.

Like *regnum*.

Note. English adjectives are not changed, in expressing different genders, numbers, or cases; but are always the same, whatever may be the gender, number, or case, of the substantives which they qualify; thus, we say a *good* man, a *good* woman, a *good* apple; *good* men, *good* women, *good* apples. Latin adjectives are varied in their termination, so as to suit the gender, number, and case, of the substantives to which they are added; thus, *bonus*, the *masculine* gender, sing. num., nom. case, is added to the substantive *vir*, to signify a *good man*;—*bona*, the *fem. gen.*, sing. num., nom. case, to *fem'ina*, to signify a *good woman*; and *bonum*, the *neut. gen.*, sing. num., nom. case, to *pō'mum*, to signify a *good apple*:—*masc. plur. nom.*, *boni viri*, *good men*; *fem. plur. nom.*, *bonæ feminae*, *good women*; *neut. plur. nom.*, *bona poma*, *good apples*;—*mas. sing. ac.*, *bonum virum*, &c.

2d., TĒ'NER, (tender.)

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.	SING.	SING.
Nom., Tē'ner,	Nom., Ten'era,	Nom., Ten'erum,
Gen., Ten'eri,	Gen., Ten'eræ.	Gen., Ten'eri.
Like <i>gener</i> .	Like <i>penna</i> .	Like <i>regnum</i> .

3d., PUL'CHER, (fair.)

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.	SING.	SING.
Nom., Pul'cher,	N., Pul'chra,	N., Pul'chrum,
Gen., Pul'chri.	G., Pul'chræ.	G., Pul'chri.
Like <i>ager</i> .	Like <i>penna</i> .	Like <i>regnum</i> .

RULE. Adjectives which end in --us or --er, --um, in the sing. nom., are declined by the rules on the gender, root, and terminations, of the first and

second declensions ;—the masculine gender like *dominus*, *gener*, or *ager* ; the feminine like *penna*, and the neuter like *regnum*.

Adjectives to be declined like *bonus* : *Al'tus*, high ; *Lá'tus*, broad ; *Mag'nus*, great : like *tener*, *As'per*, rough ; *Li'ber*, free ; *Mi'ser*, wretched : like *pulcher*, *Ru'ber*, red ; *Æ'ger*, sick ; *Sá'cer*, sacred.

Recapitulation.

What is the second class into which nouns are divided ? What does the word adjective mean ? How, and for what purpose, is it used ? Give an example.

What is the first example of adjectives of the first and second declension ? By what rule must you decline the mas. gen. of *bonus* ? What is the root of the mas. gen. ? Recite its terminations throughout, according to the rules on the second declension. Decline the mas. gen. By what rule do you decline the feminine gender ? Recite its terminations by the rules on the first declension. Decline the fem. gen. By what rule do you decline the neuter gender ? What is the root of the neut. gen. ? Recite its terminations by the rules on the second declension. Decline the neut. gen. Decline *bonus* throughout its genders, numbers, and cases—carrying every case throughout the genders ; thus, *Sing. num., nom. case, mas. gen., bonus ; fem., bona ; neut., bonum*. Where do you find *bono* ?---*bonum* ?---*bone* ?---*bonus* ?---*boni* ?---*bona* ?---*bone* ?---*bonam* ?---*bonis* ?---*bonos* ?---*bonorum* ?

Is there any change made in English adjectives, to express different genders, numbers, or cases ? Give examples. How are Latin adjectives varied ? Mention examples.

What is the second example of adjectives of the first and second declension ? By what rule must you decline the mas. gen. of *tener* ? What is the root of the mas. gen. ? Recite its terminations according to the rules on the second declension. Decline the mas. gen. By what rule do you decline the feminine gender ? What is the root of the feminine gender ? Recite its terminations by the rules on the first declension. Decline the fem. gen. By what rule do you decline the neut. gen. ? What is the root of the neut. gen. ? Recite its terminations by the rules on the second declension.

Decline the neut. gend. Decline *tener* throughout its genders, numbers, and cases, carrying every case throughout the genders. What is the mas. sing. nom. ?---the fem. plur. nom. ?---the neut. sing. nom. ?---the mas. plur. gen. ?---the fem. sing. dat. ?---the neut. plur. dat. ?---the mas. sing. gen. ?---the fem. plur. ac. ?---the neut. sing. ac. ?---the mas. plur. voc. ?---the fem. sing. voc. ?---the neut. plur. ab. ?---the mas. sing. ab. ?

What is the third example of adjectives of the first and second declension ? By what rule must you decline the mas. gend. of *pulcher* ? What is the root of the mas. gend. ? Recite its terminations according to the rules on the second declension. Decline the mas. gend. By what rule do you decline the fem. gend. ? What is the root of the fem. gend. ? Recite its terminations, according to the rules on the first declension. Decline the fem. gend. By what rule do you decline the neut. gend. ? What is the root of the neut. gend. ? Recite its terminations, according to the rules on the second declension. Decline the neut. gend. Decline *pulcher* throughout its genders, numbers, and cases, carrying every case throughout the genders. How many times and where do you find *pulchrorum* ?---*pulchros* ?---*pulchris* ?---*pulchram* ?---*pulcher* ?---*pulchra* ?---*pulchri* ?---*pulchræ* ?---*pulchrum* ?---*pulchro* ?---*pulchrarum* ?

Recite the terminations of an adjective of the first and second declensions, throughout the genders, numbers, and cases, in the following way : *Sing. num., nom. case, mas. gend., --us or --er ; fem., --a ; neut., --um ; gen., &c.* What is the termination of the neut. sing. nom. ?---of the mas. sing. gen. ?---of the fem. sing. dat. ?---of the mas. sing. ac. ?---of the neut. sing. voc. ?---of the mas. sing. ab. ?---of the neut. plur. nom. ?---of the fem. plur. gen. ?---of the mas. plur. dat. ?---of the neut. plur. ac. ?---of the fem. plur. voc. ?---of the mas. plur. ab. ?

Like what example do you decline *altus*, --a, --um ? By what rules ? Decline the masculine gender---the feminine---the neuter. Like what example do you decline *asper*, --era, --erum ? By what rules ? Decline *asper*, carrying every case throughout the gender. Like what example do you decline *ruber*, --ra, --rum ? By what rules ? Where do you find *rubris* ?---*rubra* ?---*rubræ* ?---*rubri* ?---*rubras* ?---*rubro* ?---*rubra-rum* ?---*rubres* ?---*rubrum* ?---*ruber* ?---*rubrorum* ? Like what

example do you decline *latus*, --a, --um? What is the mas. sing. ab.?---the neut. sing. nom.?---the fem. sing. ab.?---the mas. sing. nom.?---the neut. sing. ab.?---the fem. sing. gen.?---the mas. sing. voc.?---the neut. sing. gen.?---the fem. sing. voc.?---the mas. sing. gen.?---the neut. sing. voc.?---the fem. sing. dat.?---the mas. sing. ac.?---the neut. sing. dat.?---the fem. sing. ac.?---the mas. sing. dat.?---the neut. sing. ac.?---the neut. plur. nom.?---the mas. plur. nom.?---the fem. plur. nom.?---the neut. plur. ab.?---the mas. plur. ab.?---the fem. plur. ab.?---the neut. plur. gen.?---the mas. plur. gen.?---the fem. plur. gen.?---the neut. plur. voc.?---the mas. plur. voc.?---the fem. plur. voc.?---the neut. plur. dat.?---the mas. plur. dat.?---the fem. plur. dat.?---the neut. plur. ac.?---the mas. plur. ac.?---the fem. plur. ac.? Like what example do you decline *liber*, --era, --erum? In what genders, numbers, and cases, do you find the same termination? Like what example do you decline *æger*, --ra, --rum? Decline the mas. gen.?---the fem.?---the neut. Like what example do you decline *magnus*, --a, --um? Decline *magnus*, carrying every case throughout the genders. Like what example do you decline *miser*, --era, --erum? Where do you find *miser*?---*miserum*?---*miserorum*?---*miseros*?---*miserō*?---*miseras*?---*miseri*?---*miserarum*?---*miseræ*?---*miseris*? Like what example do you decline *sacer*, --ra, --rum? In what genders, numbers, and cases, do you find the same termination?

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1st Example, *Fē'lix*, (happy.)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE GENDERS.

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom., *Fē'lix*,

Gen., *Fēlī'cis*.

Declined throughout both numbers, by the rules on the gender, root, and termination, of substantives of the third declension. The sing. ab. ends either in *e* or *i*.

NEUTER GENDER.

SING. NUM.

Nom., Fē'lix,

Gen., Fēlī'cis.

Declined as the preceding genders.

2d. Mī'TIS, (meek.)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE GENDERS.

SING. NUM.

Nom., Mī'tis,

Gen., Mī'tis.

Declined as above.---Sing. ab. miti.

NEUTER GENDER.

SING. NUM.

Nom., Mī'tis,

Gen., Mī'tis.

Declined as above.---Sing. ab. miti.

3d. MIT'IOR, (meeker.)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

SING.

Nom., Mit'ior,

Gen., Mitiō'ris:

NEUTER.

SING.

Nom., Mit'ius,

Gen., Mitiō'ris.

Declined as above.---The sing. ab. ends either in *e* or *i*.

PLUR.

Declined as above, except the *neut. nom.*, *ac.*, and *voc.*, which end in *a*, and the *gen.*, throughout the genders, which ends in *um*.

4th. Ā'CER, (sharp.)

MASCULINE.

SING.

Nom., Ā'cer, or ā'cris,

Gen., Ā'cris:

FEMININE.

SING.

Nom., Ā'cris,

Gen., Ā'cris:

NEUTER.

SING.

Nom., Ā'cre,

Gen., Ā'cris.

Declined throughout both numbers, as before mentioned.---Sing. ab. acrí.

RULE. Adjectives which, in the *sing. nom.*, have the same terminations in the *mas.* as in the *fem. gen.*, and those which have the same terminations for all genders, are declined by the rules on the gender, root, and terminations, of substantives of the third declension.

Exception. Adjectives like *mitior* are excepted, which, although they have either *e* or *i*, in their *sing. ab.* have *a*, in their *neut. plur. nom., ac. and voc.*, and *um*, in all genders of the *plur. gen.*

Adjectives to be declined like *felix*, *Ā'trox*, fierce; *Au'dax*, bold; *Ā'mens*, *gen. āmen'tis*, frantic: like *mitis*, *Tris'tis*, sad; *Brē'vis*, short; *For'tis*, brave: like *mitior*, *Tris'tior*, more sad; *Brē'vior*, shorter; *For'tior*, braver: like *acer*, *Al'acer*, brisk; *Cē'ler*, swift; *Cel'éber*, celebrated.

Recapitulation.

What is the first example of adjectives of the third declension? By what rule do you decline adjectives of the third declension? Under what rules of root and termination is *felix* classed? Mention the change which takes place on the root, in the oblique cases. Spell the root of the oblique cases. What is the termination of the *neut. plur. nom., ac., and voc.*? By what rule on the third declension? What is the termination of all genders of the plural genitive? By what rule? Recite the terminations of *felix* throughout. Decline *felix* throughout the *mas. and fem. gen.*---the *neut.* Decline *felix*, carrying every case through all the genders. Where do you find *felicibus*?---*felicia*?---*felices*?---*felicium*?---*felice*?---*felix*?---*felices*?---*felicem*?---*felici*? What is the *fem. plur. ac.*?---the *neut. plur. ac.*?---the *mas. plur. ac.*?---the *fem. plur. dat.*?---the *mas. plur. dat.*?---the *neut. plur. dat.*?---the *fem. plur. voc.*?---the *mas. plur. voc.*?---the *neut. plur. voc.*?---*fem. plur. gen.*?---*mas. plur. gen.*?---*neut. plur. gen.*?---*fem. plur. ab.*?---*mas. plur. ab.*?---*neut. plur. ab.*?---*neut. sing. ac.*?---*mas. sing. dat.*?---*fem. sing. ac.*?---*neut. sing. dat.*?---*mas. sing. ac.*?---*fem. sing. dat.*?---*neut. sing. voc.*?---*mas. sing. gen.*?---*fem. sing. voc.*?---*neut. sing. gen.*?---*mas. sing. voc.*?---*fem. sing. gen.*?---*neut. sing. ab.*?---*mas. sing. nom.*?---*fem. sing. ab.*?---*neut. sing. nom.*?---*mas. sing.*

ab. ?---fem. sing. nom. ? In what genders, number, and cases, do you find the same termination ?

[All the preceding questions, or a selection from them, should be applied to all the examples of adjectives of the third declension, and to all the adjectives which are prescribed as to be declined like them.]

COMPARISON.

Explan. Comparison is the grammatical term for that classification of adjectives, which is founded on *degrees of quality*. The *degree* of quality, attributed to one object, is ascertained by *comparing* it with the degree of another : hence the origin of the grammatical term *comparison*, and the following grammatical use of the word *degree*.

OBSERV. I. All adjectives which express qualities in a simple and absolute, or *positive*, manner, are of the *positive* degree ; as, *Altus*, (high ;) *mitis*, (meek.)

II. Adjectives which represent a degree of quality, as greater or less, when *compared* with another degree of the same quality, are of the *comparative* degree ; as *Altior*, (higher ;) *mitior*, (meeker.)

III. Adjectives which express the *highest* or *lowest* degree of a quality, are of the *superlative* (surpassing) degree ; as *Altis'simus*, (highest ;) *mitis'simus*, (meekest.)

Notes. English adjectives are *compared* in the following manner :

Positive, High ; *comparative*, higher, } *superlative*, highest, }
or more high ; } or most high. }

Here we observe that the comparative and superlative degrees, are formed by adding the terminations *er* and *est*, or by prefixing the words *more* and *most*, to the positive.

Latin adjectives form their degrees of comparison, in the following manner :

ROOT.*

RULE I. When the positive is of the first and second declensions, its mas. sing. gen. forms the root of the comparative and superlative degrees; thus, Positive, *Altus*; gen., *alti*; Comparative, *altior*; Superlative, *altissimus*.

II. When the positive is of the third declension, its sing. dat. is the root of the comparative and superlative; thus, Positive, *Mitis*; dat., *miti*; Comparative, *mitior*; Superlative, *mitissimus*.

Exception to the preceding rules. Adjectives which end in *er*, in the mas. sing. nom. of the positive, adopt that case as the root of the superlative; thus, Positive, *Pulcher*; Superlative, *pŭlcher'rimus*: Positive, *Acer*; Superlative, *acer'rimus*.

TERMINATION.

I. The terminations of adjectives of the *comparative* degree, are *or* for the mas. and fem. genders, and *us* for the neut.—of the *superlative*, *ssimus* or *rimus* for the mas., *ssima* or *rima* for the fem., and *ssimum* or *rimum* for the neut.; thus, Comp. *Altior*, --*or*, --*us*,: Sup. *Altissimus*, --*a*, --*um*; *pulcherrimus*, --*a*, --*um*.

II. *Comparative* adjectives are of the third declension, and are declined like *mitior*: *superlatives* are of the first and second, and are declined like *bonus*; thus, *mas.* and *fem.*, *sing. nom.*, *altior*; *gen.*, *altioris*, &c.; *mas. sing. nom.*, *altissimus*; *gen.*, *altissimi*, &c.

* The arranging of the rules of comparison, under the heads of root and termination, tends to remove the obscurity which embarrasses the formation of the degrees, when attempted by a very young pupil.

Adjectives to be compared by the preceding rule. Jūcun'dus, pleasant; As'per, --era, --erum, rough; Æ'ger, --ra, --rum; Bré'vis, short; Fé'rox, fierce; Læ'tus, glad; Líber; Crē'ber, --ra, --rum, frequent; Lē'nis, gentle; Ap'tus, fit; Mi'ser, wretched; Au'dax, bold.

Recapitulation.

What is meant by the grammatical term *comparison*? What is the origin of the words *comparison* and *degree*? What adjectives are said to be of the positive degree? Mention examples. What adjectives are of the comparative degree? Give examples. What adjectives are of the superlative degree? Give examples.

How are English adjectives compared? How are the comparative and superlative degrees of English adjectives formed? When the positive of Latin adjectives is of the first and second declensions, what is the root of the comparative and superlative degrees? Mention an example. What is the root of the comparative and superlative degrees, when the positive is of the third declension? Give an example. What adjectives are exceptions to the rules on the formation of the degrees of comparison? What is their root in the superlative? Give examples.

What are the terminations of adjectives of the comparative degree?---of the superlative? Mention examples. Of what declension are adjectives of the comparative degree?---of the superlative? How do you decline adjectives of the comparative degree?---of the superlative? Give examples. Compare the adjectives which follow Rule II. on Termination. Decline the degrees of comparison in this manner: Mas. gend., sing. num., nom. case, Positive, *Jucundus*; Comparative, *Jucundior*; Superlative, *Jucundissimus*. Fem. gend., &c.

[The latter exercises may be restricted to a few of the examples.]

GENERAL RULES ON ADJECTIVES.

RULE I. All adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

OBSERV. The declension of an adjective is known by the terminations of its sing. nom.

RULE II. Adjectives which have a different termination for every gender in the sing. nom., are called adjectives of three terminations, and belong commonly to the first and second declensions.

RULE III. Adjectives which, in their sing. nom., have the same termination for every gender, or the same termination for two genders, are called adjectives of one or of two terminations, and belong invariably to the third declension.

RULE IV. Adjectives are declined by the same rules on root and termination, as substantives of corresponding declension and gender.

Recapitulation.

To what declensions exclusively do adjectives belong? How do you ascertain to what declension an adjective belongs? What is meant by adjectives of three terminations? To what declensions do such adjectives belong? What is meant by an adjective of one termination? What by one of two terminations? To what declension do such adjectives belong? How are adjectives declined?

Substantives and Adjectives to be declined together.

* Dominus bonus, Penna bona, Regnum bonum, Vates ‡ --is felix, Vultus mitis, Facies mitior, Puer bonus, Ratio bona, Sedile altum, Poë'ta ‡ eximius, (an excellent poet;)

* The substantive is, throughout this lesson, placed before the adjective. This arrangement has the following advantages to the pupil: it enables him to decline with more ease; it impresses on his mind the dependence of the inflection of the adjective on that of the substantive, and habituates his ear to the usual place of the adjective, in Latin phrases.

Van'rus † bona, Mú'lier † pulchra, Pomum mite, (a mellow apple;) Oc'ulus --i acer, (a keen eye;) Fructus bonus, Spé'cies --ei pulchra, (beautiful appearance;) Flumen lātis'simum, (a very broad river.)*

[The above examples should be parsed as follows, previous to their being declined: *Dominus bonus*,—*Dominus* is a common substantive, of the second declension, and of the masc. gend.;—*bonus* is an adjective of the second declension, and of the mas. gend., declined like *dominus*.]

Recapitulation.

1st Course of Questions. How do you parse *domini boni*? ---*penna bona*?---*regno bono*?---*vati felici*?---&c.

2d. What is the sing. ac. of *vultus mitis*?---the sing. ab. of *facies mitior*?---&c.

Express in Latin the English phrase of good boys—with good reason—to a high seat—&c.

* Additional lessons of this kind are comprehended in the exercises on the rules of syntax.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I. Adjectives are always of the same gender, number, and case, as their substantives ; thus, *Dominus bonus.*

Note 1st. An adjective is accordingly said to *agree* with its substantive.

Recapitulation. Of what gender, number, and case, must an adjective always be? Give an example. How will you parse any adjective which is added to a substantive? Give an example. Parse the example.

Exercises.

Method of parsing. [Substantives are parsed as before : adjectives in the following manner.] What is the singular nom. ? Of what declension is the adjective ? Like what example is it declined ? Decline it. Of what degree of comparison is it ? Compare it, (if it admits of comparison.) In what gender is it found ?---In what number ?---In what case ? Why ?

Femina--æ casta. **Dulce** pomum--i. **Vir** ‡ bo-
chaste. Sweet
nus. ‡ **Feminæ** castæ. **Viri boni.** **Dulcia** poma, (pl.
Women Of man
ac.) **Præclā'ri viri Romæ.** **Vē'lox** sagitta **Nym-**
Illustrious Swift
phæ Opis. **Tullia--æ,** pulchra filia **Mar'ci Tul'lii**
Tullia Marcus Tullius
Ciceronis. **Au'reus** cur'rus--us. **Mul'ti** reges, (pl.
Golden chariot. Many
nom.) **Próvin'ciam** impē'rīi (sing. nom. --um) **Ró-**
Province empire Ro-
mā'nī. **Fórtis'sími** duces (sing. nom. dux ‡) **ëxer'-**
man. Bravest of the
citus pop'uli (sing. nom. --us) **Rómani.** **Feróciō'-**
army people

res hom'īnes (pl. nom.) Ū'vidæ ripæ, (pl. nom.)
Moist

Nī'li max'īmi (positive, *magnus* ‡) fluminis Af'ricæ.
of the Nile of Africa.

Note 2d. The substantive with which an adjective agrees, is not always expressed: it is sometimes left to be understood, or supplied in the mind; as *Bonus*, a good man.

Exercises. Im'prōbi, (pl. nom.) Om'nīa, (pl. nom.)
Wicked men. All things.
[Supply negotia, sing. nom. --um.] Sā'piens
A wise man.

--tis. For'tium, (pl. gen.) Jus'tum. Stul'tis.
Of the brave. The just man. To the foolish.

Āvā'ros. Mälō'rum. ‡ U'num, (sing.)
The covetous. Of evils, i. e. of evil things. One thing.

ac.) Bona, (neut. plur. nom.)
Good things.

[When the adjective occurs before the substantive, the pupil should be accustomed to omit the parsing of the adjective, till he has parsed the substantive.

As many of the above examples as may be thought proper, should be declined *together*, through both numbers.

When the pupil answers the last question on the parsing of adjectives, (see above,) as applied to the exercises under Note 2d, he should be requested to mention the substantive understood, with which the adjective agrees. The English will direct him whether to supply a case of the word *negotium*, or a case of *vir* or of *homo*. *Vir* is to be used when the adjective implies *praise*, and *homo* when it signifies *dispraise*.]

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES WHICH GOVERN SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE II. Adjectives of the following classes govern, or require, the *genitive* case.

1st. Adjectives of the neuter gender, which do not agree with a substantive, but are themselves

used substantively ; as, *Multum*, (neut. sing. nom.) *pecū'nix*, (sing. gen.) much money.

Note. The sign of the genitive is always omitted after such adjectives.

2d. Adjectives which express a state of the mind ; as, *Cū'pidus honō'ris*, (sing. nom. *honos*, †) desirous of honor.

3d. Adjectives which signify plenty or want, sometimes govern the gen. ; as, *Ple'nus i'ræ*, full of anger. *In'ops* (gen. --is) *rātiō'nis*, void of reason.

4th. Comparative, superlative, numeral, and partitive, adjectives ; as, *Sē'nior* (pos. *sener* †) *frā'trum*, (sing. nom. *frater*,) the elder of the brothers. *Sā'piētis'simū* *philōsophō'rum*, the wisest of the philosophers. *Octā'vus sāpien'tiū*, the eighth of the wise men. *Pau'ci mil'itū*, (sing. nom. *mī'les*, †) few of the soldiers.

Note. The last-mentioned adjectives require a plural genitive.

Recapitulation. This and the following rules on the syntax of adjectives, should be recapitulated as follows :—What cases do adjectives govern, which, &c.? Give an example. How will you parse the — case, when it is dependent on an adjective? Give an example. Parse the example.

Exercises.

Tan'tum	fīdē'i.	Av'idus	mag'næ	glō'rīæ.	Jū'-
So much	faith.	Greedy		glory.	Ju-
lius	ex'pers	(--tis)	dō'li	(sing. nom. --us.)	Angus'-
lius	void		guile.		The nar-
ta	viā'rum.	Téren'tius	(--i)	ser'vus	(--i)
row (places)		Terence		slave	
ignā'rus	frau'dis,	(sing. nom.,	fraus.)	Puer	con'-
ignorant	fraud.				con-

sciūs culpæ. Femina prod'īga num'mi, (sing. nom.
 scious fault. lavish money.
 --us.) Dex'tra (--ter, --ra, rum) fortior man'ū-
 The right (hand) the stronger
 um, (sing. nom. --us. †) Jū'lia pūlcher'rīma fīliā'-
 Julia
 rum † pulchræ matris, (sing. nom. mater.) Marcus
 mother. Marcus
 --i prī'mus puerorum. Han'nībal --is max'imus
 the first Hannibal
 (pos. magnus †) Cārthāginien'sium, (sing. nom. --is.)
 Carthaginian.

RULE III. Latin adjectives which, when rendered into English, are usually followed by *to* or *for*, govern the *dative*; as, U'tīlis, (--is, --e,) bel'lo, (sing. nom. --um,) useful *for* war. Pērniciō'sus rēipub'licæ, (compounded of *res* and *pub'licus*, --a, --um,) pernicious *to* the republic.

Exercises.

Fil'ius † sim'ilis, † --is, --e, pā'tri: (sing. nom. pā'-
 (his) father.
 ter. An'imus ap'tus stu'diō: (sing. nom. --um.)
 A mind fit for study.
 Tibē'rīus--i, tribū'nus--i accep'tus plē'bi: (sing.
 Tiberius, tribune acceptable the people.
 nom.--s.) Opā'ca, (neut. plur. nom.) locō'rum, (sing.
 The shady places
 nom. --us, †) rēgiō'nis, (sing. nom. regio,) grātis'sī-
 region most agree-
 mæ, (pos. gratus,) oc'ulo: (sing. nom. --us.) Via
 ble eye.
 āper'ta pau'cis. Hō'mo † par † fortis'simo mil'itum:
 open few (men.) A man equal bravest
 sing. nom. mī'les.) Dā'vus--i, ser'vus fidē'lis, (--is,
 soldier. Davus faithful

--e,) hē'ro, (sing. nom. --us,) dissim'ilis, (--is, --e,) (his) master unlike

frā'tri: (sing. nom. frā'ter.) Cicero, dīsertis'sīmus (his) brother. Cicero

pos. dīser'tus) ōrātō'rum, vir avidus gloriæ ar'tis, eloquent

(sing. nom. ars,) utilis civ'ibus, (sing. nom. --is. †) art (his) fellow-citizens.

Vīctō'riā--æ cālāmītō sa pā'triæ, ēxītīab ilis, (--is, A victory baneful (his) country destructive

--e,) Romano nom īni, (sing. nom. nō'men,) fūnes'ta name fatal

urbi, dī'ra humā'no gen'eri: (sing. nom. genus.) direful human race.

RULE IV. The following adjectives govern the *ablative* case :

1st. Dig'nus, worthy ; Indig'nus, unworthy ; Con'ten'tus, content ; Præd'itus, endowed ; Cap'tus, taken ; Frē'tus, trusting ; Nā'tus, born ; Sā'tus, descended ; Or'tus, sprung ; Ed'itus, rising ; with others of similar signification ; thus, *Dignus hōnō'rē*, worthy of* honor.

2d. Adjectives of plenty or want sometimes govern the *ablative* ; as, Ābun'dans, (--tis,) dīvītīs, (plur. nom. --æ, †) abounding in riches. Cā'rens, (--tis,) fraude, free from guile.

3d. Comparatives require the *ablative* of the thing with which any thing is compared ; as, Dul'-cior, (pos. dulcis) melle, (sing. nom. mel.) sweeter than honey.

* The learner should here observe, that the signs of the cases are sometimes changed, so as to be accommodated to the meaning of the word which precedes the substantive.

4th. When an adjective implying praise or dispraise, is joined to the latter of two substantives, which signify different persons or things, the latter substantive is sometimes governed in the ablative; as, *Vir magnâ virtute*, (sing. nom. *virtus*,) a man of great virtue.

Exercises.

Femina prædita suavitâte: (sing. nom. *suavitas*.)

suavity.

Homo similis gigan'ti, (sing. nom. *gigas*, †) *frētus*

giant

viribus, (sing. nom., vis, †) *corporis*. *Marcus--i* *Li-*

Marcus

Li-

cinus--i, *sâ'tus nobili*, (sing. nom. --is, --is, --e,)

cinus

noble

gen'ere: (sing. nom., gē'nus.)

race.

Sō'lum--i mītis'si-

A soil

mellow-

mum om'nium, fē'rax olī'vâ.

est

productive olive.

Cor †--dis vac'uum

void

mendâ'cio, (sing. nom. --um,) *addic'tum vē'ro*: (sing. falsehood devoted truth.

nom., --um.) *Prob'itas--tis præstantior*, (pos. *præs-* Probity excel-

tans,) *au'ro*: (sing. nom. --um.) *Boni felicità' res*

lent

gold.

Good (men)

sûper'bis, (sing. nom. --us, --a, --um,) *regibus*.

Vir'tus, † --tis, splendid'ior, (pos. *splen'didus*, --a,

Virtue

splendid

--um,) *rē'giâ ves'te*: (sing. nom. --is.) *Similis pa-*

royal robe.

tri viro dig'no egrē'giis, (sing. nom. --us, --a, --um,) distinguished

lau'dibus. *Conten'tus mediocritâ'te*, (sing. nom.

medioc'ritas, *par'ca vōluptâ'tum*: (sing. nom. vō-

mediocrity

sparing

lup'tas.) Frater viri nati unâ deâ'rum. ‡ Vita
 pleasure. A life

foecun'da omnibus bonis. Infē'lix vir extor'ris--is
 fruitful

--e pā'triâ. Lac'rýmæ muli'érum, (sing. nom. mū'-
 The tears wo-

lier, ‡) potentiō'res (pos. *pō'tens*,) ar'mis, (plur. nom.
 man powerful

arma, ‡) virorum. Fem'ina exim'ia pulchrītū'dine :
 surpassing

(sing. nom. *pulchrītū'dō*.) Homo magnâ vi corpo-
 beauty.

ris. Puer pro'bâ in'dole : (sing. nom. *in'doles*.)
 good disposition.

CHAPTER II.—PRONOUNS.

Section I.—Substantive Pronouns.

Explan. 1st. THE word *pronoun* is derived from two Latin words signifying *for a noun*, and is used as the name of the second class of Latin words; because all words of this class are used *for, or instead of, nouns*, so as to avoid too frequent repetition of the name of the person or thing for which they stand; thus, instead of saying, *Geor'gius ami'sit* GEOR'GI li'bro*s*, (George has lost *George's* books,) we say, *Georgius amisit su'os libros*, (George has lost *his* books.)

2d. *Substantive pronouns* are so called, because every word of this class resembles a *substantive*, in not having several terminations expressive of different genders.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

1st, E'GO, (I.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., E'go, <i>I</i> ,	N., Nos, <i>we</i> ,
G., Mē'i, <i>of me</i> ,	G., Nos'trum, or --i, } <i>of us</i> , }
D., Mī'hi, <i>to me</i> ,	D., Nō'bis, <i>to us</i> ,
Ac., Me, <i>me</i> ,	Ac., Nos, <i>us</i> ,
No vocative,	No vocative,
Ab., Me, <i>with</i> , &c. <i>me</i> :	Ab., Nō'bis, <i>with</i> , &c. <i>us</i> .

2d. TU, (thou.)

SING.	PLUR.
N., Tu, <i>thou</i> ,	N., Vos, <i>ye</i> , or <i>you</i> ,
G., Tū'i, <i>of thee</i> ,	G., Ves'trum, or --i, } <i>of you</i> , }
D., Tib'i, <i>to thee</i> ,	D., Vō'bis, <i>to you</i> ,
Ac., Te, <i>thee</i> ,	Ac., Vos, <i>you</i> ,
V., Tu, <i>thou</i> ,	V., Vos, <i>ye</i> , or <i>you</i> ,
Ab., Te, <i>with</i> , &c. <i>thee</i> :	Ab., Vō'bis, <i>with</i> , &c. <i>you</i> .

3d. Sū'i, (*of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.*)

SING. and PLUR.

No nominative.

G., Sū'i, *of himself, &c.*D., Sib'i, *to himself, &c.*Ac., Se, *himself, &c.*

No vocative,

Ab., Se, *with himself, &c.**Recapitulation.*

What is the second class of Latin words? What is the word *pronoun* derived from? Why are pronouns so called? Why are pronouns used? Mention an example. Why are substantive pronouns so called?

Which is the first substantive pronoun? Decline it with the English of the cases. Where do you find *nos*?—*mei*?—*nobis*?—*me*?—*nostrum*?—*mihi*?—*nostri*? What is the sing. gen.?—the plur. gen.?—the sing. ac.?—the plur. ac.?—the sing. ab.?—the plur. ab.?—the sing. dat.?—the plur. dat.?—the sing. voc.?—the plur. voc.?—the sing. nom.?—the plur. nom.? What cases are alike? What is the English of the sing. ab.?—plur. ab.?—sing. voc.?—plur. voc.?—sing. ac.?—plur. ac.?—sing. dat.?—plur. dat.?—sing. gen.?—plur. gen.?—sing. nom.?—plur. nom.? Express, in Latin, *with us*—*with me*—*us*—*me*—*to us*—*to me*—*of us*—*of me*—*we*—*I*.

[*Tu* and *sui* should be recapitulated by the same, or by similar, questions.]

Section II.—Adjective Pronouns.

Explan. These pronouns are called *adjective*, because every word of this class has, like an *adjective*, three different forms of termination, suited to the different genders of the substantives for which they stand, or with which they agree.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1st. IL'LE, --A, --UD, (that.)

MASC. SING.	FEM. SING.	NEUT. SING.
N., Il'le,	N., Il'la,	N., Il'lud,
G., Illi'us,	G., Illi'us,	G., Illi'us,
D., Il'li,	D., Il'li,	D., Il'li,
Ac., Il'lum,	Ac., Il'lam,	Ac., Il'lud,
V., Il'le :	V., Il'la :	V., Il'lud.

The remaining case of the sing. num., and all the cases of the plural, are declined throughout the genders, like *bonus*.

2d. HIC, HÆC, HOC, (this.)

MASC.		FEM.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N., Hic,	N., Hi,	N., Hæc,	N., Hæc,
G., Hui'jus,	G., Hoi'rum,	G., Hui'jus,	G., Hoi'rum,
D., Huic,	D., His,	D., Huic,	D., His,
Ac., Hunc,	Ac., Hos,	Ac., Hanc,	Ac., Has,
V., Hic,	V., Hi,	V., Hæc,	V., Hæc,
Ab., Hôc :	Ab., His.	Ab., Hâc :	Ab., His.

NEUT.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Hoc,	N., Hæc,
G., Hui'jus,	G., Hoi'rum,
D., Huic,	D., His,
Ac., Hoc,	Ac., Hæc,
V., Hoc,	V., Hæc,
Ab., Hôc :	Ab., His.

3d. Is, EA, ID, (that.)

MAS.		FEM.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N., Is,	N., Ī'i,	N., Ē'a,	N., Ē'æ,
G., Ē'jus,	G., Ēō'rum,	G., Ē'jus,	G., Ēā'rum,
D., Ē'i,	D., Ē'is or Ī'is,	D., Ē'i,	D., Ē'is or Ī'is.
Ac., Ē'um,	Ac., Ē'os,	Ac., Ē'am,	Ac., Ē'as,
No voc.,	No vocative,	No voc.,	No vocative,
Ab., Ē'o :	Ab., Ē'is or Ī'is.	Ab., Ē'ā :	Ab., Ē'is or Ī'is.

NEUT.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Id,	N., Ē'a,
G., Ē'jus,	G., Ēō'rum,
D., Ē'i,	D., Ē'is or Ī'is,
Ac., Id,	Ac., Ē'a,
No vocative,	No vocative,
Ab., Ē'o :	Ab., Ē'is or Ī'is.

Note. The above three pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they *demonstrate*, or point out, the persons or things for which they stand, or to which they are added.

4th. QUIS, QUÆ, QUOD, (what, or which.)

MAS.		FEM.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N., Quis,	N., Qui,	N., Quæ,	N., Quæ,
G., Cū'jus,	G., Quō'rum,	G., Cū'jus,	G., Quā'rum,
D., Cui,	D., Queis, or	D., Cui,	D., Queis, or
Ac., Quem,	quī'bus,	Ac., Quam,	quī'bus.
No voc.,	Ac., Quos,	Ac., Quas,	No vocative,
Ab., Quo :	No vocative,	No voc.,	No vocative,
	Ab., Queis or	Ab., Quā :	Ab., Queis, or
	quī'bus.		quī'bus.

NEUT.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Quod or quid,	N., Quæ,
G., Cujus,	G., Quorum,
D., Cui,	D., Queis or quī'bus,
Ac., Quod or quid.	Ac., Quæ,
No vocative,	No vocative,
Ab., Quo :	Ab., Queis or quī'bus.

Note. This pronoun is called *interrogative*, because it is used in *interrogating*, that is, in asking questions.

OBSERV. I. The rest of the simple pronouns are declined by the following rules :

Explan. By simple pronouns are meant those which are not compounded of two or more words.

RULE I. IP'SE, (self,) and IS'RE, (that,) of the demonstrative class, are declined like *ille*.

Except the neut. sing. nom., ac., and voc., of *ipse*, which end in *um*.

II. The *relative* pronoun, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, (who, or which,) is declined like *quis*, in all its genders, numbers, and cases.

Except the mas. sing. nom., which has *qui*, and the neut. sing. nom. and ac., which have *quod* only.

Explan. The *relative* pronoun is so called from its always relating to an *antecedent*, (that is, a foregoing word or phrase,) expressed or understood.

III. The *possessive* pronouns MĒ'US, --A, --UM, (my, or mine,) TŪ'US, --A, --UM, (thy, or thine,) SŪ'US, --A, --UM, (his, her, its, or their,—or his own, her own, &c.) are declined like *bonus*.

Exception. *Meus* has *mi*, and, sometimes, *meus*, in the mas. sing. voc.

Explan. These pronouns are called *possessive*, because

they represent something as in the *possession* of the person or thing for which they stand.

IV. The *patrial* pronouns, *Nos'TRAS*, (of our country,) *Ves'TRAS*, (of your country,) *Cū'JAS*, (of which country,) are declined like *felix*; thus, *Sing. nom.*, *Nos tras*; *gen.*, *nostrā'tis*, &c.

Explan. *Patrial* pronouns are so called from the Latin word *patria*, --æ, (native country,) because they refer to the native country of the person or thing to which they are added.

Observ. 2d. The different genders of the demonstrative, the interrogative, and the relative, pronouns, may be used substantively, that is, instead of substantives. *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, then correspond to the English word *he*: *illa*, *ipsa*, *ista*, *hec*, and *ea*, to *she*: *illud*, *ipsum*, *istud*, *hoc*, and *id*, to *it*; and their plurals to *they*.

Note 1st. The following distinctions are sometimes used in the signification of *ille*, *iste*, and *is*. *Ille* designates a person who is *at a distance*: *iste* one who is *pointed to*: *is* one who is *absent*. *Iste* sometimes implies *contempt*; as, *Iste homo*, (that fellow.)

2d. *Ille* sometimes means the *former*, and *hic* the *latter*.

3d. *Ipse*, when used along with *ego*, corresponds to the English compound pronoun *myself*:—when used along with *tu*, it corresponds to *thyself*:—when used along with *sui*, it corresponds to *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves*.

4th. The *relative*, when used substantively, is rendered by *who*, for the *mas.* and *fem.* *gend.*, and by *which*, for the *neuter*.

5th. *Quis*, *quæ*, *quod*, or *quid*, is sometimes used as an *indefinite* pronoun, and signifies *some* or *any*:—when used substantively and indefinitely, it is rendered by *some* or *any one*, for the *mas.* and *fem.*; and by *some* or *any thing*, for the *neuter*.

Explan. *Indefinite* signifies *undefined*, or *uncertain*, and is applied to *quis*, when used in the acceptation of *some* or *any*; because we are then left *uncertain* as to the person or thing that is spoken of.

Compound Pronouns

are so called because they are *compound* words, formed of one of the simple pronouns, and another word or syllable.

1st. IDEM, EADEM, IDEM, (the same.)

MASC.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Ī'dem,	N., Ī'idem,
G., Ējus'dem,	G., Ēō'rundem,
D., Ēī'dem,	D., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem,
Ac., Ēun'dem,	Ac., Ēos'dem,
V., Ī'dem,	V., Ē'ādem,
Ab., Ēō'dem :	Ab., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem.

FEM.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Ē'ādem,	N., Ēā'dem,
G., Ējus'dem,	G., Ēā'rundem,
D., Ēī'dem,	D., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem,
Ac., Ēan'dem,	Ac., Ēas'dem,
V., Ē'ādem,	V., Ēā'dem,
Ab., Ēā'dem :	Ab., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem.

NEUT.

SING.	PLUR.
N., Ī'dem,	N., Ē'ādem,
G., Ējūs'dem,	G., Ēō'rundem,
D., Ēī'dem,	D., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem,
Ac., Ī'dem,	Ac., Ē'ādem,
V., Ī'dem,	V., Ē'ādem,
Ab., Ēō'dem :	Ab., Ēis'dem, or ĩis'dem.

Note. This pronoun belongs to the demonstrative class: it is compounded of *is* and the syllable *dem*. A few changes are made on the simple pronoun, for the sake of avoiding harshness of sound in the compound word.

[By comparing the inflection of *idem* with that of *is*, the learner will be able to point out these changes himself.]

OBSERV. The rest of the compound pronouns are declined by the following rules :

RULÉ I. **QUIS'NAM**, (who ?) **QUIS'PIAM** and **QUIS'QUAM**, (any,) and **QUIS'QUE**, (every,) are declined by *annexing* the syllables *nam*, *piam*, *quam*, and *que*, to the simple pronoun *quis*, through all its genders, numbers, and cases.

Exception. *Quisquam* has sometimes *quicquam* for *quidquam*, and *quenquam* for *quemquam* : it has no fem. sing. ac., and no plur. num.

II. **QUIS'QUIS**, (whosoever,) is nothing more than *quis* redoubled, throughout.

Except the fem. gend., which is not used, and the neuter, which is found in no other cases than the nom. and the ac. *Quicquid* is commonly used, for harmony's sake, instead of *quidquid*.

III. **AL'QUIS**, (some,) **EC'QUIS**, (who ?) **SĪ'QUIS**, (any,) **NĒ'QUIS**, (none,) **NUM'QUIS**, (any ?) are declined by *prefixing* a syllable to *quis*, throughout its genders, numbers, and cases, and substituting the letter *a* for the termination *æ*, wherever it occurs.

Note. *Siquis*, *nequis*, and *numquis*, are commonly found written apart : *Si quis*, *ne quis*, *num quis*.

IV. **ECQUIS'NAM**, (who ?) and **UNUSQUIS'QUE**, (every,) are declined by both *prefixing* and *subjoining* a syllable or a word to *quis*, throughout its genders, numbers, and cases.

Note. The first part of *unusquisque* is the irregular adjective *unus*, † --a, --um, which, in the compound pronoun, retains its own inflection, throughout ; thus, gen., *uniuscujusque*, &c.

Exception to the above rule. *Ecquisnam* is found only in the sing. nom., and *unusquisque* has no plur. num.

V. **QUICUN'QUE**, (whoever,) **QUI'DAM**, (some, or certain,) **QUI'LIBET** and **QUI'VIS**, (any you please,) are declined by *subjoining* a syllable to the relative pronoun *qui*, throughout its genders, numbers, and cases.

Exception. *Quidam* substitutes *n* for *m*, in all those cases in which *qui* has *m* for its final letter, and has *quoddam* or *quiddam* in the neut. sing. nom. and ac.

General Rules on the Compounds of Quis and Qui.

I. All the compounds of *quis* and *qui*, have seldom or never *queis*, but usually *quibus*, in the plur. dat. and ab.

II. *Quod* and its compounds are used when a substantive is expressed, *quid* and its compounds when a substantive is understood; thus, *Quoddam nēgō'tium*, (a certain thing,) *quiddam*, (a certain thing.)

Observ. The following table exhibits the classification of Latin pronouns, arranged so as to correspond to that of English pronouns.

ENGLISH.

PERSONAL.

I, Thou, He, She, It, with their plurals, We, Ye, or You, They.

Expl. These pronouns are called *personal*, because they designate *persons*, in the following manner: I and We denote the person or persons who *speak*, Thou and You, the person or persons who are *spoken to*, and He, She, It, and They, the person or thing, or the persons and things that

LATIN.

SUBSTANTIVE.

Ego, Tu, and, (used substantively,) Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, and Is, with their plurals.

ENGLISH.

are *spoken of*.—*I* is called the *first person*, *thou* the *second*, and *he, she, or it*, the *third*. *We, ye, you, and they*, are classed in the same manner.

Compound Personal.

Myself, Thyself, Himself, Herself, Itself, Ourselves, Yourselves, Themselves.

RELATIVE.

Who, Which, That, What.

ADJECTIVE.**Possessive.**

My, Thy, His, Her, Our, Your, Their.

Distributive.

Each, Every, Either.

Note. These pronouns are called *distributive*, because they serve to *distribute* a class into individuals.

Demonstrative.

This and That, with their plurals These and Those.

Indefinite.

Some, Other, Any, One, All, Such, None, &c.

LATIN.

Compound Substantive.

E'gomet, Tū'te, Šū'met, with their plurals.

Note. In declining the above pronouns, add the syllable *met*, to *ego* and *tui*, throughout. *Tute* is used only in the sing. nom. *vosmet*, &c. in the plur., throughout.

ADJECTIVE.**Relative.**

Qui.

Possessive.

Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester, with their plurals.

Distributive.

Quisque, Unusquisque.

Either is expressed by the irregular adjective *uter*. ‡

Demonstrative.

Hic, Ille, Iste, Is.

To this class belongs *Idem*, corresponding to the English adjective *same*, and *Ipse* when it signifies *very*.

Indefinite.

Quis, Quispiam, Quisquam, Aliquis, Si quis, Ne quis,

ENGLISH.

Interrogative.

Who? Which? What?

LATIN.

Quicumque, Quidam, Quilibet, Quivis.

All and *Such* are expressed by the regular adjectives, *omnis*, --is, --e, and *tālis*, --is, --e. *One* and *None*, by the irregular adjectives, *ūnus* † and *nullus*; † and *Other*, by the irregular adjective *ālius*, --a, --ud, which is declined like the pronoun *ille*, except the mas. sing. nom.

Interrogative.

Quis? Quisnam? Ecquis?
Num quis? Ecquinam?

Recapitulation.

Why are *adjective* pronouns so called? Which is the first example of adjective pronouns? Decline *ille* by the genders singly—by the cases throughout the genders, and give the English of the cases. Decline *ille*, taking the genders singly, as used substantively, and giving the English according to *Observ.* 2d, on simple adjective pronouns. Where do you find *illud*?—*illis*?—*illius*?—*illa*?—*illi*?—*illæ*?—*illum*?—*illas*?—*ille*?—*illos*?—*illam*?—*illarum*?—*illo*?—*illorum*? What is the neut. sing. ab. ?---the fem. sing. nom. ?---the mas. sing. ab. ?---the neut. sing. nom. ?---the fem. sing. ab. ?---the mas. sing. nom. ?---the neut. sing. voc. ?---the fem. sing. gen. ?---the mas. sing. voc. ?---the neut. sing. gen. ?---the fem. sing. voc. ?---the mas. sing. gen. ?---the neut. sing. ac. ?---the fem. sing. dat. ?---the mas. sing. ac. ?---the neut. sing. dat. ?---the fem. sing. ac. ?---the mas. sing. dat. ?---the neut. plur. nom. ?---the mas. plur. ab. ?---the fem. plur. nom. ?---the neut. plur. ab. ?---the mas. plur. nom. ?---the fem. plur. ab. ?---the neut. plur. gen. ?---the mas. plur. voc. ?---the fem. plur. gen. ?---the neut. plur. voc. ?---the mas. plur. gen. ?---the fem. plur. voc. ?---the neut. plur. dat. ?---the mas. plur. ac. ?---the fem. plur. dat. ?---the neut. plur. ac. ?---the mas. plur. dat. ?---the fem. plur. ac. ? In what genders, numbers, and cases, do you find the same termination? In what genders, numbers,

and cases, are the terminations of *ille* like those of *bonus*? In what are they different? What is the difference? Of what class of signification is *ille*? Why are some pronouns called *demonstrative*?

[The above questions should be modified so as to apply to all the remaining simple adjective pronouns.]

What distinctions are sometimes made in the signification of *ille*, *iste*, and *is*? How are *ille* and *hic* sometimes distinguished? Decline *ego* and *ipse* throughout, with the English as mentioned in Note 3d, under *Observ.* 2d, on simple adjective pronouns—*tu* and *ipse*—*sui ipsius*, &c.

Why are *compound* pronouns so called? Which is the first example of compound pronouns? [The questions on *idem* to be put as on *ille*, with the addition of the following:] Of what is *idem* compounded? For what purpose does *is* undergo a change in the compound word? In what genders, numbers, and cases, does the change take place? What is the change?

By what rule do you decline *quisnam*, *quispiam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque*? What exception is there to this rule? Decline *quisnam* throughout, in both ways, and with the English. Where do you find *quænam*?—&c., as on *ille*. What is the neut. sing. ab.?—&c. as on *ille*. In what genders, numbers, and cases, do you find the same termination?

These questions should be put on all the compound pronouns, and when the given word contains an exception, the following questions should be answered: In what genders, numbers, and cases, does this word differ from the simple pronoun? What is the difference?

Mention the English personal pronouns. Why are these pronouns called *personal*? What Latin pronouns correspond to them? Name them. Mention the English compound personal pronouns. What Latin pronouns correspond to them? Name them. Decline *egomet*—*suimet*—*vosmet*. Name the English relative pronouns. What Latin pronoun corresponds to these? How are the English adjective pronouns subdivided? How are the Latin? Mention the English possessive pronouns,—the Latin:—the English distributive,—the Latin. Why are these pronouns called *distributive*? How is *either* expressed in Latin? Mention the English demonstrative pronouns,—the Latin:—the Eng-

lish indefinite pronouns,—the Latin. **How** are *all, such, one, none, and other*, expressed? Mention the English interrogative pronouns,—the Latin.

Adjective Pronouns and Substantives to be declined together.

Note. The English of the words should always be given.

Ille homo. Illa femina. Illud regnum. Iste vir. Ista mulier. Istud regnum. Hic puer. Hæc facies. Hoc cornu. Quis color. Quæ fides? Quod templum. Is sermo. Ea ratio. Id bellum. Iste fructus. Meus pater. Tua mater. Suus liber. Miles (*gen. militis*) nostras, *a soldier of our country.*

Decline, with the English throughout, the relative *qui* after the word *vir*,—leaving *vir* in the nom., whilst you vary the cases of *qui*,—leaving *vir* in the gen., whilst you vary *qui*,—leaving *vir* in the dative—in the ac.—in the voc.—in the ab. Vary *vir*, and leave *qui* in the nom.—in the gen.—the dat.—the ac.—the ab. Their plurals in the same way. Decline in the same way *femina* and *quæ*—*bellum* and *quod*. Decline *Idem liber* throughout. *Eadem toga. Idem corpus. Quisnam homo. Quicquid regnum. Quicunque arbiter.*

These words should be parsed as follows, previous to their being declined :

Ille homo. *Ille* is a pronoun of the demonstrative class of signification—of the adjective class of inflection—found in the mas. gend., sing. num. *Homo*, &c., as before.

Recapitulation.

1st Course of Questions. How do you parse *illum hominem*?—*illi homini*?—&c.

2d. What is the sing. ab. of *illa femina*?—the plur. nom.?—&c.

3d. Express in Latin the English phrase, *Of that kingdom*—*In that kingdom*—&c.

One or more of these courses of questions, should be applied to every adjective pronoun and substantive.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE I. Substantive pronouns are commonly regulated by the same rules as substantive nouns; thus, *Ego discip'ulus*, --i, I, a scholar. *Pars mei*, a part of me.

Recapitulation. By what rules are substantive pronouns commonly regulated? Mention examples. How will you parse syntactically a substantive pronoun, which is dependent on another word? Mention and parse examples.

Method of parsing. Of what class of signification is the pronoun?—of what class of inflection? Decline it. Where is it found? Why?

Exercises.

Amī'cus --i, *mē'mor* ‡ *tui*. *Doctis'sīmus*, (pos. Friend Most learned
doctus,) *vestrūm*. *Bellum inū'tile nobis exītiō'sum*
unprofitable destructive
sibi. *Conspec'tus* --us *tui cārīō'ris*, (pos. *cā'rus*,) dear
The sight
mihi lū'ce, (sing. nom. *lux*. ‡) *Timor mei*, *hominis*
light.
nū'di, (sing. nom. *us*--, *a*--, *um*--,) *tē'lis* (sing. nom. destitute
--*um*.)

RULE II. Adjective pronouns are of the same gender, number, and case, as the substantives or substantive pronouns to which they are joined; as, *Meus frater*, my brother. *Tu ipse*, thou thyself.

Note. The substantive or substantive pronoun to which the adjective pronoun is joined, is not always expressed; as *Liber istius*, the book of *that man*, or *his* book: here the word *hominis* is understood.

Exception to the rule. The relative pronoun *qui* is not always of the same case as its antecedent.

Explan. The reason of this exception is, that, whilst other pronouns are parsed either as adjectives, or as substantives, the relative is parsed both as an adjective, and as a substantive;—adjectively, as to gender and number; and substantively, as to case;—thus, in the phrase, *De'us cū'jus mā'nere viv'imus*, God, by whose bounty we live, *cujus* is parsed adjectively, as agreeing, in gender and number, with its antecedent, *Deus*—substantively, as governed by the substantive *munere*. In the phrase, *Deus, cui nullus est sim'ilis*, God, to whom there is none like, *cui* is parsed as agreeing in gender and number, with its antecedent, and as governed by the adjective *similis*.

The *recapitulation* of the syntax-rules of adjective pronouns, is generally the same as that of adjective nouns.

The *method of parsing* is the same as under Rule I. on the syntax of pronouns.

Exercises.

Ā'mans --tis tui suæ mā'tris. Exō'sus, (--a,
Affectionate to thee his mother. Hating
--um,) mei, āmī'ci sui. Iste im'mī'tis, (--is, --e,)
That (man) harsh
illis mitis nul'li, (sing. nom. --us, a--, --um. †) Tu
gentle
(voc.) sō'ror † cā'rīor vitā ipsā. Puel'la --æ orba
A girl bereft
patre suo. Hoc pec'tus, --ōris, tū'mīdum irā.
breast swelling
Fac'inus, --ōris, dignum impē'rio (sing. nom. --um)
A deed empire
tuo. Jōhan'nes --is sē'nīor (pos. *senex*) fratrum
John
meorum. Regnum vestrorum patrum. Quæ causa,
cause
--æ, tanti (sing. nom. --us, --a, --um,) belli—tantæ
so great
cædis? (sing. nom. --es.) Aliquid novi (sing. nom.
slaughter. new

--us, --a, --um,) *gratum* (sing. nom. --us, --a, --um,) acceptable

istia

to those (men.)

RULE III. Indefinite and interrogative pronouns require sometimes a plural genitive; as, *Aliquis philōsophō'rum*, some one of the philosophers. *Quis nostrum?* which of us?

Exercises.

Ecquis fratrum? Unusquisque discipulorum.
- scholar

Jus'tior (pos. *justus*) quolibet hominum. *Quæ so-*
- just

rorum pulchræ matris? Ovid'ius, --i, poeta † élé-
gan'tior (pos. *el'égans*) quovis vet'erum, (sing. nom.
- elegant

vetus. †)

CHAPTER III.—VERBS.

Section I.—Regular Verbs.

Explan. 1. Verb signifies *word*, and is used as the name of the third class of Latin words; because a word of that class is indispensable to the meaning of a sentence, and always contains so much of the meaning of a sentence, that it may, by way of eminence, be called *the word*.—To illustrate this explanation, strike out the verb from the following sentence: *Diligens discipulus (lê'git) lectiô'nem*, the diligent scholar (reads) his lesson.—When the verb is omitted, the sentence loses its meaning, and we see, at once, the importance of the verb, and the reason why it has obtained so distinguished a name.

OBSERV. I. Verbs are used to represent a person or a thing as *being*, or as *acting*, or as *being acted on*.

II. Verbs are accordingly classified by their signification, in the following manner:

1st. *Active*, or those which express *action*; as, *TAN'GO librum*, I touch the book.

2d. *Passive*, or those which express *passion*, that is, the receiving of an action; as, *Liber TAN'GITUR a me*, the book is touched by me.

3d. *Neuter*, or those which express *neither action nor passion*; as, *Dor'mio*, I sleep.

III. Verbs of the first of the above classes, are subdivided into, 1st, *Transitive*; 2d, *Intransitive*.

Explan. 2d. The word *transitive* means *passing over*, and is applied to those verbs which represent an action as not terminating in the agent, but as passing over to another person or thing; as, *TANGIT librum*, he touches the book.—*Intransitive* means *not passing over*. This word designates

those verbs which represent an action as not passing over to any other person or thing, but terminating in the agent; as, *Loq'uitur*, he speaks.

Explan. 3d. Regular verbs are those which, in their form, are regulated by certain rules.

Recapitulation.

What is the third class of Latin words? What does the word *verb* signify? Why is it used as the name of the third class of words? Illustrate this explanation.

How are verbs used? How are verbs classed by their signification? What do active verbs express? Give an example. What do passive verbs express? Give an example. What do neuter verbs express? Give an example. How are active verbs subdivided? What does the word *transitive* mean? To what verbs is it applied? Give an example. What does *intransitive* mean? What verbs does this word designate? Give an example. What is meant by regular verbs?



FIRST CONJUGATION.*

Explan. Conjugation means *yoking*, combining, or classifying. It is the grammatical term for that classification of verbs, which is dependent on their terminations.—The words *conjugate* and *conjugating* are accordingly applied to a grammatical statement of the terminations of verbs.

The word *conjugation* is sometimes used as the grammatical term for a *class* of words, that is, as many verbs as are classified by the same terminations. Hence the distinctions of *first conjugation*, *second conjugation*, &c.

* Uniformity of arrangement requires that the verb *Sum* be placed among the irregular verbs; but as it forms a part of the inflection of regular verbs, the learner should now pass on to it, reverting for explanations of mood, tense, &c., to the lessons on the first conjugation.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Explan. The word *voice*, as applied to verbs, signifies *manner of speaking*, or expression, and marks the difference of termination, in the *manner of expressing action*, from that of expressing the *receiving of an action*.

The *active voice* is the grammatical term for that class of terminations, which expresses *action*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Explan. The word *mood* signifies *manner*. It is used to denote the difference of termination in the *manner of expressing an assertion, a command, a conditional, and an indefinite, idea*.

The *indicative mood* is that which simply *indicates, asserts, or interrogates*.

PRESENT TENSE.

Explan. *Tense* signifies *time*. This word expresses the different sorts of terminations by which the time of an action or of an event is represented, as *past, present, or future*.

The *present tense* is used to represent a thing as happening, at the time in which it is spoken of.

Singular Number.

Explan. *Number* as applied to verb, designates, as in nouns and pronouns, the difference of termination which intimates *whether one person or thing, or more than one, are signified*.

First Person.

Person is the difference of termination which represents a person or thing as *speaking, as spoken to, or as spoken of*.

The *first person* corresponds to the first substantive pronoun, and designates the person or persons who *speak*.

(Ego) A'mo, I love, do love, or am loving.

Second Person.

The *second person* corresponds to the second substantive pronoun, and denotes the person or persons who are *spoken to*.

(Tu) A'mas, Thou lovest, dost love, or art loving.

Third Person.

The third person corresponds to *Ille*, or any other adjective pronoun used substantively, and denotes the person or thing *spoken of*.

(*Ille*, --*a*, or --*ud*,) *Ā'mat*, He, she, or it, loves, does love, or is loving.

*Plural Number.**First Person.*

(*Nos*) * *Amā'mus*, We love, do love, or are loving.

Second Person.

(*Vos*) *Amā'tis*, Ye or You love, do love, or are loving.

Third Person.

(*Illi*, --*æ*, or --*a*,) *Ā'mant*, They love, do love, or are loving.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

The *imperfect* tense of a Latin verb is used to express what is *imperfectly*, or not entirely, *past*.

Sing. Num.

1st Person, † *Amā'bam*, I loved, or did love, or was loving.

2d „ *Amā'bas*, Thou lovedst, didst love, or wast loving.

3d „ *Amā'bat*, He, &c., loved, did love, or was loving.

* *A*, unaccented, in the beginning of Latin words, should have the same sound as in corresponding English words; thus, English, *Āmen'd*; not, as commonly, but falsely, pronounced, *Āmen'd*: Latin, *Āmamus*, &c.

† The pronoun is henceforward omitted: it should be inserted, however, in reciting, throughout the first conjugation. This arrangement will assist the learner in supplying the nominative, in syntax and translation. In reciting the third person, the gender should be occasionally varied.

Plur. Num.

- 1st P., *Amā'bā'mus*, We loved, did love, or *were* lov-
 2d „ *Amā'bā'tis*, Ye „ „ „ „ „ [ing.
 3d „ *Amā'bant*, They „ „ „ „ „

Note. The pronoun which precedes the verb, is not always expressed in Latin; because, unless when peculiar emphasis is intended, the difference of termination in the verb itself, makes a sufficient distinction of the persons.

PERFECT TENSE.

This tense, in Latin verbs, denotes what is *perfectly*, or *entirely*, *past*.

Sing. Num.

- 1st P., *Amā'vi*,* I loved, have loved, or have been loving.
 2d „ *Amā'vis'ti*, Thou lovedst, hast loved, or hast been loving.
 3d „ *Amā'vit*, He, &c., loved, has loved, or has been loving.

Plur. Num.

- 1st „ *Amav'imus*, We loved, have loved, or have been loving.
 2d „ *Amā'vis'tis*, Ye or You „ „ „ „ „
 3d „ *Amā'vē'runt*, or *-ā'vē're*, They „ „ „ „ „

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

The word *pluperfect* means *more than finished*, or *past*. This tense accordingly represents a thing as more than

* The syllables *avi*, &c. are represented as the terminations of the perfect tense, and for the following reason. All verbs of the first conjugation, which are regular in root and termination, have for their root the letters which precede *-o* of the active voice, indicative mood, present tense: consequently, *--avi*, and not *-i*, merely, is the termination of the perfect tense.

merely past ; that is to say, it represents a thing as *past before* something else.

Sing. Num.

1st, *Amav'eram*, I *had loved*, or *had been loving*.

2d, *Amav'eras*, Thou *hadst loved*, or, &c.

3d, *Amav'erat*, He *had*, &c.

Plur. Num.

1st, *Amav'ëramus*, We *had*, &c.

2d, *Amav'ërä'tis*, Ye or You *had*, &c.

3d, *Amav'ërant*, They *had*, &c.

FUTURE TENSE.

The *future* tense represents a thing as *future*.

Sing. Num.

1st, *Amä'bo*, I *shall* or *will love*, or *shall* or *will be loving*.

2d, *Amä'bis*, Thou *shalt* or *wilt love*, or *shalt*, &c.

3d, *Amä'bit*, He *shall* or *will love*, or *shall*, &c.

Plur. Num.

1st, *Amab'imus*, We *shall*, &c.

2d, *Amab'itis*, Ye or you *shall*, &c.

3d, *Amä'bunt*, They *shall*, &c.

Recapitulation.

What is meant by *conjugation*? How is it used as a grammatical term? To what are the words *conjugate* and *conjugating* applied? How is the word *conjugation* sometimes used?

What does the word *voice* signify, when applied to verbs? What difference does it mark? What is meant by the active voice?—What does the word *mood* signify? How is it used? How do you distinguish the indicative mood?—What does the word *tense* signify? What does this word express? How is the present tense used?—the imperfect?—

the perfect?---the pluperfect?---the future?---What does the word *number* designate, when applied to verbs?---What is *person*? To what does the first person correspond? What does it designate? To what does the second person correspond? What does it denote? To what does the third person correspond? What does it denote?---Is the pronoun which precedes the verb, always expressed in Latin? Why?

1st Course of Questions on the Inflection of Verbs.

In *what conjugation, voice, mood, and tense, do you find* amo*?---amavi?---amabo?---amabam?---amaveram?---amavimus?---amabimus?---amabamus?---amaveramus?---amas?---amavisti?---amabis?---amabas?---amaveras?---amatis?---amavistis?---amabitis?---amabatis?---amaveratis?---amat?---amavit?---amabit?---amabat?---amaverat?---amant?---amaverunt?---amabunt?---amabant?---amaverant?---amavere?

2d. Recite the sing. num., first person, through all the tenses of the indicative mood, in the following way, Indicative mood, sing. num., first person, present tense, *amo*: imperfect, *amabam*: perfect, *amavi*, &c. Recite, in the same way, the sing. num., second person;---the sing. num., third person;---the plur. num., first person;---second;---third.

3d. Recite the terminations of the present tense,---of the imperfect,---of the perfect,---of the pluperfect,---of the future.

4th. What is the termination of the *first* conjugation, *active* voice, *indicative* mood, *pluperfect* tense, *plural* number, *first* person?---of the first conjugation,† &c., imperfect tense, plur. num., first person?---of, &c., future tense, plur. num., first person?---of, &c., perfect tense, plur. num., first person?

* To accustom the pupil to perfect accuracy in parsing, it is of great importance that he be taught to mention the conjugation, voice, mood, tense, number, and person, invariably, and in exact order.

† The constant repetition of the conjugation, voice, and mood, along with the tense, number, and person, associates inseparably in the mind of the learner, the given part of the verb with its full grammatical definition,—a thing that will facilitate very much his first attempts in Latin exercises.

---of, &c., present tense, plur. num., first person ?---of, &c., plup. tense, sing. num., first person ?---of, &c. imp. tense, sing. num., first person ?---of, &c., fut. tense, sing. num., first person ?---of, &c. perf. tense, sing. num., first person ?---of, &c., pres. tense, sing. num., first person ? [Questions on the second and third persons, in the same way.]

5th. What are the signs, or English characteristic words, of the present tense ?---of the imperfect ?---of the perfect ?---of the pluperfect ?---of the future ? [The signs are designated, once for each tense, by *Italic letters*.]

6th. *Express in Latin*, Thou dost love.---Ye were loving.---He loves.---They have loved.---I did love.---She had loved.---Thou lovedst.---It will love.---We have been loving.---They do love.---I had loved.---Ye shall love.---He loves.---I loved.---Thou hadst loved.---We did love.---They had loved.---I shall love.---Ye love, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

This mood is called *subjunctive*, because it is commonly *subjoined* to a verb, with which it is connected in signification. It is sometimes called *potential*, that is, relating to *power*, because this mood not unfrequently expresses *power*,

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Num.

1st, *Ā'mēm*, I love,* *do love*, or *am loving*, or *may* or *can love*, or *may* or *can be loving*.

2d, *Ā'mes*, Thou lovest, &c., or *mayst* or *canst* love, &c.

3d, *Ā'met*, He loves, &c., or *may* or *can love*, &c.

* The indefinite and subjunctive forms of the English, are placed before the potential, throughout this mood ; because the Latin subjunctive is, in translation, rendered by the former, much oftener than by the latter.

Plur. Num.

1st, *Amē'mus*, We love, &c., or may, &c.

2d, *Amē'tis*, Ye or You love, &c.

3d, *Ā'ment*, They love, &c.

Note. This tense, when preceded by an indefinite word, has sometimes the same sign as the indic., imperf., and perf.; thus, *Quā'si amem*, as though I loved.

*IMPERFECT.**Sing.*

1st, *Amā'rem*, I loved, *did love*, or *was loving*, or *might, could, would, or should, love, or might, &c., be loving.*

2d, *Amā'res*, Thou lovedst, or mightst, couldst, &c.

3d, *Amā'ret*, He loved, or might, &c.

Plur.

1st, *Amā'rē'mus*, We loved, &c.

2d, *Amā'rē'tis*, Ye or you loved, &c.

3d, *Amā'rent*, They loved, &c.

*PERFECT.**Sing.*

1st, *Amav'erim*, I loved, or have loved, or may have loved.

2d, *Amav'eris*, Thou lovedst, &c., or mayst, &c.

3d, *Amav'erit*, He loved, &c., or may, &c.

Plur.

1st, *Amāver'imus*, We loved, &c.

2d, *Amāver'itis*, Ye or You loved, &c.

3d, *Amav'erint*, They loved, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing.

- 1st, *Amāvis'sem*, I had loved, had been loving, or might, could, would, or should, have loved, or might, &c., have been loving.
 2d, *Amāvis'ses*, Thou hadst loved, &c., or mightst, &c.
 3d, *Amāvis'set*, He had loved, &c., or might, &c.

Plur.

- 1st, *Amāvis'sē'mus*, We had loved, &c.
 2d, *Amāvis'sē'tis*, Ye or You had, &c.
 3d, *Amāvis'sent*, They had, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing.

- 1st, *Amav'ero*, I shall or will love, or shall or will have loved.
 2d, *Amav'eris*, Thou shalt or wilt love, or shalt, &c., have loved.
 3d, *Amav'erit*, He shall or will, &c.

Plur.

- 1st, *Amāver'imus*, * We shall, &c.
 2d, *Amāver'itis*, Ye or You shall, &c.
 3d, *Amav'erint*, They shall, &c.

Recapitulation,

as in the indicative mood, with the addition of the following exercises.

Compare with one another, the terminations of the indicative and subjunctive moods, through all their tenses, in this

* The penultimate of this tense is marked short; because it is rarely found long, unless in the poets.

manner: First conjugation, active voice, present tense, sing. num., first pers., *indicative* mood, --o: *subjunctive*, --em: second pers., *indic.*, --as: *subj.*, --es: &c. Imperf. tense, sing. num., first pers., *indic.*, --abam: *subj.*, --arem: &c.

Compare the *indic.* and *subj.* moods by the signs of their tenses, as follows: Present tense, *indicative* mood, *love*, *do love*, or *am*, *art*, &c., *loving*: *subjunctive*, *love*, or *may* or *can love*, or *may*, &c., *be loving*, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Imperative means *commanding*. This mood is so called, because it is used chiefly for *commanding*. It is sometimes used, however, for *intreating* and *exhorting*.

Sing.

No first person.

2d, *Ā'ma*, or *Amā'to*, *Love thou*, or *do thou love*.

3d, *Amā'to*, *Let him love*.

Plur.

No first person.

2d, *Amā'te*, or *Amā'tō'te*, *Love ye*, or *do ye love*.

3d, *Aman'to*, *Let them love*.

Note. The Latins sometimes used, instead of the *imperative* mood, the *subjunctive* mood, *present* tense. This substitute for the *imperative*, was frequently used for the *sing.* and *plur.* second and third persons, was always used for the *plur. num.*, first person, and sometimes for the same person of the *sing. num.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood receives its name from its representing a thing in an *infinite*, or *unlimited*, manner; that is, without being limited by number or person.

PRESENT. *Amā're, To love*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive in the accusative case, comes before it,) *That I, &c., love or loved.*

PERFECT, *Amāvis'se, To have loved*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive in the accusative case, comes before it,) *That I, &c., loved or had loved,*

FUTURE. *Esse or fuisse Amātū'rus, --a, --um, To be about to love*, or *To have been about to love*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive in the ac. case, comes before it,) *That I, &c., am, was, or have or had been, about to love, or will or would love.*

PARTICIPLE.

This part of the verb is so called, because it *participates* of the nature of an adjective, as well as that of a verb. With the latter, it participates tense, or time, voice, or action and passion; and with the former, declension, gender, number, and case, and, sometimes, comparison.

PRESENT. *Ā'mans, --tis, Loving.*

FUTURE. *Amātū'rus, --a, --um, About to love.*

Note. A present*participle is declined like the adjective *felix*, and a future participle like *bonus*.

GERUND.

The word *gerund* is derived from a Latin word signifying to bear. It is used as the name of that part of the verb, which expresses the *bearing*, carrying, or passing, of the action, from the agent to the object.

Nom., Aman'dum, Loving.

Gen., Aman'di, Of loving.

Dat., Aman'do, To or for loving.

Ac., Aman'dum, Loving.

No vocative.

Ab., Aman'do, With, &c. loving.

Note. The gerund, therefore, is, as to its form, a verbal substantive, declined like *regnum*.

SUPINE.

Supine signifies remiss, or *inactive*, and is, in grammar, used to designate those parts of the active verb, which were originally borrowed from the *inactive*, or passive, state of the verb.

FIRST. Amā'tum, To love.

SECOND. Amā'tu, To love, or To be loved.

Note. The supine is, in its form, a verbal substantive resembling, in its terminations, two of the cases of *fructus*.

Recapitulation.

What does the word *imperative* mean? Why is the imperative mood so called? How is it sometimes used? Has the imperative mood any distinction of tense? What person of this mood is wanting? What other part of the verb is sometimes used instead of the imperative mood? Conjugate the subj. mood, pres. tense, with the English, so as to correspond to the imperative mood.

From what does the infinitive mood receive its name? Recite the definition of the indic. mood,—of the subj,—of the imperat,—of the infin. How do these moods differ from one another?

Why is the participle so called? In what does the participle resemble the verb? In what does it resemble the adjective? How is a present participle declined? How a future participle? Decline *amans*---*amaturus*.

What is the word *gerund* derived from? How is it used? What is the gerund as to its form? Like what substantive is it declined?

What does the word *supine* signify? How is it used in grammar? What is the supine as to its form? What does it resemble?

Where do you find *amato*?---*amavisse*?---*amandum*?---*amate*?---*amare*?---*amans*?---*amatum*?---*amaturus*?---*amate*?---*amaturus*?---*a*?---*um esse*?---*amatu*?---*amando*?---*ama*?---*amandi*?---*amanto*?---*amando*?---*amature*?---*amaturum esse*?---*amaturum*?---*amaturas esse*?---*amaturam esse*?

Recite the terminations of the *imperative mood*,---of the *infinitive*,---of the *participles*,---*gerunds*,---*supines*.

What is the termination of the *imperat. mood*, *sing. num.*, *second person*?---of the *second supine*?---of the *gerund in the ablative case*?---the *participle of the fut. tense*?---the *infin. mood*, *fut. tense*?---the *first supine*?---the *gerund in the nom.*?---the *participle of the pres. tense*?---the *infin. mood*, *fut. tense*?---the *imperat. mood*, *plur. num.*, *sec. pers.*?

Express in Latin, the English phrases, To be loved.---To love.---Loving.---About to love.---To have loved.---To be about to love.---Let them love.---That I love.---Let us love.---That thou didst love.---Let him love.---That he loved.---Love ye.---That you had loved.---Love thou.---That I was about to love.---That they were about to love.---In loving.---By loving.---For loving.

Recapitulation of the active voice. Carry the persons, singly, throughout the voice, in the following way: Active voice, *sing num.*, *first person*, *indic. mood*, *pres. tense*, *amo*: *imperf.*, *amabam*, &c.

The terminations to be recapitulated in the same way.

PASSIVE VOICE.

The *passive voice* includes all that class of terminations which expresses *passion*. The term *passion*, when used grammatically, signifies the suffering or receiving of an action, or, in other words, *being acted on*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.**PRESENT TENSE.***Sing. Num.*1st, *Ā'mor*, I am loved.2d, *Amā'ris*, or } Thou art loved.
Amā're, }3d, *Amā'tur*, He, &c., is loved.*Plur. Num.*1st, *Amā'mur*, We are loved.2d, *Amam'ini*, Ye „ „3d, *Aman'tur*, They „ „**IMPERFECT.***Sing.*1st, *Amā'bar*, I was loved.2d, *Amā'bā'ris*, or } Thou wast loved.
Amā'bā're, }3d, *Amā'bā'tur*, He, &c., was loved.*Plur.*1st, *Amā'bā'mur*, We were loved.2d, *Amā'bam'ini*, Ye, &c.3d, *Amā'ban'tur*, They, &c.**PERFECT.***Sing.*1st, *Amā'tus*, --a, --um, Sum or fui, I have been loved.

2d, „ „ „ Es or fuisti, Thou hast been loved.

3d, „ „ „ Est or fuit, He, &c., has been loved.

Plur.

1st, *Amā'ti*, --æ, --a, Sumus or fuimus, We have been loved.

2d, " " " Estis or fuistis, Ye, &c.

3d, " " " Sunt, fuerunt, or fuere, They, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing.

1st, *Amatus*, --a, --um, Eram or fueram, I had been loved.

2d, " " " Eras or fueras, Thou hadst been loved.

3d, " " " Erat or fuerat, He, &c., had been loved.

Plur.

1st, *Amati*, --æ, --a, Eramus or fueramus, We had been loved.

2d, " " " Eratis or fueratis, Ye, &c.

3d, " " " Erant or fuerant, They, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing.

1st, *Amā'bor*, I shall or will be loved.

2d, *Amab'ëris*, or } Thou shalt or wilt be loved.
Amab'ëre, }

3d, *Amab'itur*, We, &c., shall or will be loved.

Plur.

1st, *Amab'imur*, We shall or will be loved.

2d, *Amā'bim'ini*, Ye, &c.

3d, *Amā'bun'tur*, They, &c.

PERFECT.*Sing.*

- 1st, *Amatus*, --a, --um, *Sin* or *fuerim*, I *was loved, have been loved, or may have been loved.*
- 2d, " " " *Sis* or *fueris*, Thou *wast loved, hast, &c.*
- 3d, " " " *Sit* or *fuerit*, He, &c., *was, &c.*

Plur.

- 1st, *Amati*, --æ, --a, *Simus* or *fuerimus*, We *were loved, or, &c.*
- 2d, " " " *Sitis* or *fueritis*, Ye, &c.,
- 3d, " " " *Sint* or *fuerint*, They, &c.

PLUPERFECT.*Sing.*

- 1st, *Amatus*, --a, --um, *Essem* or *fuissem*, I *had been loved, or might, could, would, or should have been loved.*
- 2d, " " " *Esses* or *fuisesses*, Thou *hadst, &c.*
- 3d, " " " *Esset* or *fuisset*, He, &c., *had, &c.*

Plur.

- 1st, *Amati*, --æ, --a, *Essemus* or *fuissemus*, We *had been, &c.*
- 2d, " " " *Essetis* or *fuissetis*, Ye, &c.
- 3d, " " " *Essent* or *fuisissent*, They, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing.

1st, *Amatus*, --a, --um, *Fuero*, I shall have been loved.

2d, " " " *Fueris*, Thou shalt or wilt have, &c.

3d, " " " *Fuerit*, He shall or will have been loved.

Pler.

1st, *Amati*, --æ, --a, *Fuerimus*, We shall, &c.

2d, " " " *Fueritis*, Ye, &c.

3d, " " " *Fuerint*, They, &c.

Recapitulation,

as in the active voice.

Compare the subjunctive with the indic. mood, by their terminations. Compare the pass. subj. with the active.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.

No first person.

2d, *Amā're*, or } *Be thou loved*, or *do thou be loved*.
 Amā'tor, }

3d, *Amā'tor*, *Let him, &c., be loved*.

Pler.

No first person.

2d, *Amam'ini*, *Be ye or you loved*, or *do ye or you be loved*.

3d, *Aman'tor*, *Let them be loved*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *Amā'ri*, *To be loved*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive in the ac.

case comes before it,) *That I, &c., am, &c., loved, or was or were loved.*

PERFECT. *Esse or fuisse, Amā'tus, --a, --um, To have been loved, or, (when, &c.,) That I, &c., was or were loved, or have, or had been, loved.*

FUTURE. *Amā'tum ī'ri, To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *Amā'tus, --a, --um, Loved.*

FUTURE. *Aman'dus, --a, --um, To be loved.*

Recapitulation,

as in the active voice.

Compare, by their terminations, the active and passive imperatives,—the infinitives.

Recapitulation of the passive voice,—as the active.

RECAPITULATION OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1st. *Where do you find amator?---ames?---amabat?---amata?---amaverit?---amatus eras?---amo?---amandum?---amatus sit?---amavisti?---amabar?---amatum iri?---amant?---amemini?---amabimur?---amatu?---amata fuerit?---amaveris?---amor?---amare?---amabunt?---amatæ estis?---amemus?---amaturus?---amatum esset?---amavisti?---amandi?---amabimini?---amem?---amaretur?---amatum esse?---amabo?---amati simus?---amaverint?---amatum?---amabas?---amemini?---amaverunt?---amari?---amarer?---amaverat?---amati sumus?---amando?---ametur?---amato?---amati essetis?---amat?---amavisse?---amabor?---ama?---ametis?---amaremur?---amaturus?---amabuntur?---amas?---amamur?---amavi?---amatæ sunt?---amati sitis?---amanda?---amavisses?---amabimini?---amatus essem?---amatus?---amamur?---amant?---&c.*

2d. *Recite the persons, singly, throughout the voices, moods, tenses, and numbers, by terminations, as follows :*

First conjug., sing. num., first person, active voice, indic. mood, present tense, --o ; imperf., --abam, &c.

3d. A course of questions on the terminations, in the following manner : What is the termination of, &c. ?

[The order of this course of questions may or may not be shown beforehand to the pupil. His capacity should determine whether it should or should not.]

4th Compare the English signs of the tenses of the passive, with those of the active, voice.

5th. *Express in Latin, the English phrase, He loves.---I am loved---&c.*

[The same method should be adopted with this course of questions, as with the third.]

The following table exhibits a comparison of the parts of Latin and English verbs.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
<i>Voices.</i>	<i>Voices.</i>
Active, Passive.	Active, Passive.
<i>Moods.</i>	<i>Moods.</i>
Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, Potential.	Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive.
	<i>Note.</i> The <i>potential</i> and the <i>subjunctive</i> , are, in Latin, included under one form, called the <i>subjunctive mood</i> .
<i>Tenses.</i>	<i>Tenses.</i>
Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, First Future, Second Future.	Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future.
	<i>Note.</i> The English <i>second future</i> is represented in Latin, by the <i>subjunctive future</i> .
<i>Numbers.</i>	<i>Numbers.</i>
Singular, Plural.	Singular, Plural.
<i>Persons.</i>	<i>Persons.</i>
First, Second, Third.	First, Second, Third.

ENGLISH.

Participles.

Present, Perfect, Future,
Compound Perfect.

LATIN.

Participles.

Present, Perfect, Future.

Note. The English *compound perfect* is represented by the Latin *perfect* participle.

Gerund.

Expressed in English by the present participle, or by a *participial substantive*.

Supine.

Expressed in English by the *infinitive mood*.

RULES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ROOT.

RULE. The root of most verbs of the first conjugation, consists of the letters which precede *o* final, of the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, first person; and this root continues, without change, throughout the verb; thus, *Amo, amas, amabam, &c.*

TERMINATIONS.

RULE. Most verbs of the first conjugation have the same terminations in all their parts; as *amo*.

INFLECTION.

RULE. To inflect, or conjugate, a regular verb of the first conjugation, add to the root of the given word, the terminations of *amo*.

Verbs to be conjugated by the preceding rules.

Clá'mo, cry ; Cré'o, create ; Vó'co, call ; Pá'ro, prepare ;
Laudo, praise ; Dū'bĭto, hesitate.

Recapitulation. What is the root of most verbs of the first conjugation ? Does this root undergo any change ? Give an example. What terminations have most verbs of the first conjugation ? How do you conjugate a verb of the first conjugation ?

Recapitulation of the moods and voices, &c., as in ante.



SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

(Signs,) Have, hast, has.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Hā'beo,*	Hābē'mus,
2d, Hā'bes,	Hābē'tis,
3d, Hā'bet :	Hā'bent.

IMPERFECT.

(Sign,) Had.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Hābē'bam,	Hābē'bā'mus,
2d, Hābē'bas,	Hābē'bā'tis,
3d, Hābē'bat :	Hābē'bant.

* *Doceo* is irregular in the termination of its supine, and consequently in all the parts which are formed from the supine. *Habeo*, which is regular throughout, is therefore preferred as an example.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Have had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hab'ui,	Hăbū'imus,
2d,	Hăbuis'ti,	Hăbuis'tis,
3d,	Hab'uit :	Hăbiuē'runt.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hăbū'eram,	Hăbū'erā'mus,
2d,	Hăbū'eras,	Hăbū'erā'tis,
3d,	Hăbū'erat :	Hăbū'erant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or will have.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hăbē'bo,	Hăbeb'imus,
2d,	Hăbē'bis,	Hăbeb'itis,
3d,	Hăbē'bit :	Hăbē'bunt.

Recapitulation throughout the verb *habeo*, the same as in *amo*. Add a comparison of every mood with the corresponding mood of *amo*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) May or can have.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hă'bēam,	Hăbēā'mus,
2d,	Hă'bēas,	Hăbēā'tis,
3d,	Hă'bēat :	Hă'bēant.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had or might, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Häbē'rem,	Häbē're'mus,
2d,	Häbē'res,	Häbē're'tis,
3d,	Häbē'ret :	Häbē'rent.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Had, have had, or may, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Häbū'ërim,	Häbuer'imus,
2d,	Häbū'ëris,	Häbuer'itis,
3d,	Häbū'ërit :	Häbū'ërint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had had, or might, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Häbuis'sem,	Häbuis'sē'mus,
2d,	Häbuis'ses,	Häbuis'sē'tis,
3d,	Häbuis'set :	Häbuis'sent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., have had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Häbū'ëro,	Häbuer'imus,
2d,	Häbū'ëris,	Häbuer'itis,
3d,	Häbū'ërit :	Häbū'ërint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Have, &c.

*Sing.**Plur.**No first person.*

2d,	Hā'be, or	}	Hābē'te, or	}
	Hābē'to,		Hābē'tō'te,	
3d,	Hābē'to :		Hāben to.	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To have, &c.

PRESENT.

Hābē're.

PERFECT.

Hābūis'se.

FUTURE. Esse or fuisse Hābītū'rus, --a, --um.**PARTICIPLES.**

(Signs,) Having, &c.

PRESENT. Hā'bens.**FUTURE.** Hābītū'rus, --a, --um.**GERUND.**

(Signs,) Having, &c.

N., Hāben'dum,*G.*, Hāben'di, &c.**SUPINES.****FIRST.** Hab'itum, To, &c.**SECOND.** Hab'itu, To, &c.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hā'beor,	Hābē'mur,
2d,	Hābē'ris, or Hābē're,	Hābem'īni,
3d,	Hābē'tur :	Hāben'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hābē'bar,	Hābē'bā'mur,
2d,	Hābē'ba'ris, or Hābē'bā're,	Hābē'bam'īni,
3d,	Hābē'bā'tur :	Hābē'ban'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Sum or fui,	Sumus or fuimus,
2d,	Es or fuisti,	Estis or fuistis,
3d,	Est or fuit :	Sunt, fuerunt, or fuere.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had been had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	<i>Habitus, --um,</i> Eram or fueram,	<i>--a,</i> Eramus or fueramus,
2d,	<i>--a,</i> Eras or fueras,	<i>--e,</i> Eratis or fueratis,
3d,	<i>Habitus,</i> Erat or fuerat :	<i>Habiti,</i> Erant or fuerant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or will be had.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hābē'ōor,	Hābeb'īmur,
2d,	Hābeb'ēris, or Hābeb'ēre,	Hābē'bim'ini,
3d,	Hābeb'ūtur :	Hābē'bun'tur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., had or may, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hā'bēar,	Hābēā'mur,
2d,	Hābēā'ris, or Hābēā're,	Hābēam'ini,
3d,	Hābēā'tur :	Hābēan'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., had or might, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Hăbē'rer,		Hăbē'rē'mur,
2d,	Hăbē'rē'ris, or Hăbē'rē're,	}	Hăbē'rem'ni,
3d,	Hăbē'rē'tur :		Hăbē'ren'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., had or may, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Sim or fuerim,		Simus or fuerimus,
2d,	Sis or fueris,		Sitis or fueritis,
3d,	Sit or fuerit :		Sint or fuerint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had been had, or might, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Essem or fuisset,		Essemus or fuisset-
2d,	Esset or fuisset,		Essetis or fuissetis,
3d,	Esset or fuisset :		Essent or fuissent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or, &c., had.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	<i>um</i> , Fuero,	<i>a</i> , --	Fuerimus,
2d,	<i>a</i> , --, Fueris,	<i>æ</i> , --	Fueritis,
3d,	<i>Habitus</i> , --, Fuerit :	<i>Habiti</i> , --	Fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Be, &c., had.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
	<i>No first person.</i>		
2d,	Häbē're, or Häbē'tor,	}	Häbem'ini,
3d,	Häbē'tor :		Häben'tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To be, &c., had.

PRESENT.	Häbē'ri.
PERFECT. Esse or fuisse	Hab'itus, --a, --um.
FUTURE.	Hab'itum ī'ri.

PARTICIPLES.

(Signs,) Had, &c.

PERFECT.	<i>Habitus</i> , --a, --um.
FUTURE.	Häben'dus, --a, --um.

RECAPITULATION OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Questions, and other exercises, as in the first conjugation.

RULES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.**ROOT.**

RULE. The root of most verbs of the second conjugation, consists of the letters which precede *ed*, the termination of the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, first person ; thus, *Habeo, habes, habebam, &c.*

TERMINATIONS.

RULE. Most verbs of the second conjugation have the same terminations, throughout, as *habeo*.

INFLECTION.

RULE. To conjugate a verb of the second conjugation, add the terminations of *habeo*, throughout, to the root of the given word.

Verbs to be conjugated by the preceding rules.

Mó'néo, advise ; Plá'ceo, please ; Pá'réo, obey ; Já'céo, lye ; Dó'léo, grieve ; Lá'téo, lurk.

Recapitulation as in amo.

**THIRD CONJUGATION.****ACTIVE VOICE.****INDICATIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Read, &c.

Sing.

Plur.

1st, Lē'go, | Leg'imus,

2d, Lē'gis, | Leg'itis,

3d, Lē'git : | Lē'gunt.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Read, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Lēgē'bam,	Lēgē'bā'mus,
2d, Lēgē'bas,	Lēgē'bā'tis,
3d, Lēgē'bat :	Lēgē'bant.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Read or have read, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Lē'gi,	Leg'imus,
2d, Lēgis'ti,	Lēgis'tis,
3d, Lē'git :	Lēgē'runt, or } Lēgē're. }

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had read, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Leg'ēram,	Leg'ērā'mus,
2d, Leg'ēras,	Leg'ērā'tis,
3d, Leg'ērat ;	Leg'ērānt.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., read.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Lē'gam,	Lēgē'mus,
2d, Lē'ges,	Lēgē'tis,
3d, Lē'get :	Lē'gent.

*Recapitulation as in amo.*Compare the terminations of the moods, &c., of *lego*, with those of *amo* and *habeo*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Read or may, &c., read.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Lē'gam,	Lēgā'mus,
2d, Lē'gas,	Lēgā'tis,
3d, Lē'gat :	Lē'gant.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Read or might, &c., read.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Leg'ërem,	Leg'ërē'mus,
2d, Leg'ëres,	Leg'ërē'tis,
3d, Leg'ëret :	Leg'ërent.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Read or may have, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Leg'ërim,	Leger'ïmus,
2d, Leg'ëris,	Leger'ïtis,
3d, Leg'ërit :	Leger'ërint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had read or might, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Légis'sem,	Légis'sē'mus,
2d, Légis'ses,	Légis'sē'tis,
3d, Légis'set :	Légis'sent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., have read.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Leg'ero,	Léger'imus,
2d, Leg'eris,	Léger'itis,
3d, Leg'erit :	Léger'int.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Read, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>No first person.</i>	
2d, Lē'ge, or	Lég'ite, or
Lég'ito, }	Lég'itō'te, }
3d, Leg'ito :	Légun'to.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To read, &c.

PRESENT.	Lég'ere.
PERFECT.	Légis'se.
FUTURE.	Esse or fuisse Lectū'rus, --a, --um.

PARTICIPLES.

(Signs,) Reading, &c.

PRESENT.	Lē'gens.
FUTURE.	Lectū'rus, --a, --um.

GERUND.

(Signs,) Reading, &c.

N.	Légen'dum,
G.	Légen'di, &c.

SUPINES.

(Signs,) To read, &c.

FIRST.	Lec'tum,
SECOND.	Lec'tu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., read,

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Lē'gor,		Leg'imur,
2d,	Leg'ēris, or Leg'ēre,	}	Legim'ini,
3d,	Leg'itur :		Legun'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., read.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Lēgē'bar,		Lēgē'bā'mur,
2d,	Lēgē'bā'ris, or Lēgē'bā're,	}	Lēgēbam'ini,
3d,	Lēgē'bā'tur :		Lēgē'ban'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., read, or have been, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Sum or fui,		Sumus or fuimus,
2d,	Es or fuisti,		Estis or fuistis,
3d,	Est or fuit :		Sunt, fuerunt, or fuere.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had been read.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Eram or fueram,		Eramus or fueramus,
2d,	Eras or fueras,		Eratis or fueratis,
3d,	Erat or fuerat :		Erant or fuerant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., be read.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Lē'gar,		Lēgē'mur,
2d,	Lēgē'ris, or		Lēgem'ini,
	Lēgē're,		
3d,	Lēgē'tur :		Lēgen'tur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Am, &c., read, or may, &c.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Lē'gar,		Lēgā'mur,
2d,	Lēgā'ris, or		Lēgam'ini,
	Lēgā're,		
3d,	Lēgā'tur :		Lēgan'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., or might, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
1st,	Leg'èrer,	}	Leg'èrē'mur,
2d,	Leg'èrē'ris, or Leg'èrē're,		Leg'èrem'ini,
3d,	Leg'èrē'tur :		Leg'èren'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., or may have, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
1st,	Sim or fuerim,	}	Simus or fuerimus,
2d,	Sis or fueris,		Sitis or fueritis,
3d,	Sit or fuerit :		Sint or fuerint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had, &c. or might, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
1st,	Essem or fuiss- sem, }	}	Essemus or fuisse- mus, }
2d,	Esses or fuisses,		Essetis or fuissetis,
3d,	Esset or fuisset :		Essent or fuissent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., been read.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Fuero,		Fuerimus,
2d,	Fueris,		Fueritis,
3d,	Fuerit:		Fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Be, &c., read.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
	<i>No first person.</i>	
2d,	Leg'ere, or Leg'itor,	Lègim'ini,
3d,	Leg'itor :	Lègun'tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To be, &c., read.

PRESENT.	Lē'gi.
PERFECT. Esse or fuisse	Lec'tus, -a, --um.
FUTURE.	Lec'tum ī'ri.

PARTICIPLES.

(Signs,) Read, &c.

PERFECT.	Lec'tus, --a, --um.
FUTURE.	Lègen'dus, --a, --um.

RECAPITULATION OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

See *first* conjugation.

RULES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.**ROOT.**

RULE. Verbs of the third conjugation are not uniform in their root ; but most of them adopt, for the root of the greater number of their parts, the letters which precede *o* final of the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, first person ; thus, *Lego, legis, legebam, &c.*

TERMINATIONS.

RULE. Most verbs of the third conjugation have the same terminations, in all their parts, as *lego*.

INFLECTION.

RULE. To conjugate a verb of the third conjugation, add the terminations of *lego*, throughout, to the root of the given word.

*Verbs to be conjugated by the preceding rules.**

Bībo, bībi, bib'itum, bib'ere, drink ; Verto, verti, versum, vertere, turn ; Solvo, solvi, solū'tum, sol'vere, loose ; Scando, scandi, scansum, scan'dere, climb ; Læ'do, læ'di, læ'sum, læd'ere, hurt ; Trib'uo, trib'ui, tribū'tum, tribū'ere, bestow.

Recapitulation. See amo.

* The pupil will be enabled to conjugate much more intelligently and correctly than he otherwise would, if he is now directed to pass on to the *formation* of verbs.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Hear, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Au'dio,	Audī'mus,
2d, Au dis,	Audī'tis,
3d, Au'dit :	Audīunt.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Heard, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Audīē'bam,	Audīē'bā'mus,
2d, Audīē'bas,	Audīē'bā'tis,
3d, Audīē'bat :	Audīē'bant.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Heard, or, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Audī'vi,	Audiv'imus,
2d, Audivīs'ti,	Audivīs'tis,
3d, Audī'vit :	Audivē'runt, or } Audivē're. }

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had heard, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Audiv'eram,	Audiv'erā'mus,
2d, Audiv'eras,	Audiv'erā'tis,
3d, Audiv'erat :	Audiv'erant.

FUTURE.

(Signs, Shall, &c., hear.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Au <i>dīam</i> ,	Audīē' <i>mūs</i> ,
2d, Au <i>dīs</i> ,	Audīē' <i>tis</i> ,
3d, Au' <i>diet</i> :	Au' <i>dient</i> .

Recapitulation. See *amo*.Compare the terminations of the moods, &c., of *audio*, with those of *amo*, *habeo*, and *lego*.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Hear, or, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Au' <i>dīam</i> ,	Audīā' <i>mus</i> ,
2d, Au' <i>dīs</i> ,	Audīā' <i>tis</i> ,
3d, Au' <i>dīat</i> :	Au' <i>dīant</i> .

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Heard, or, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Audī' <i>rem</i> ,	Audī'rē' <i>mus</i> ,
2d, Audī' <i>res</i> ,	Audī'rē' <i>tis</i> ,
3d, Audī' <i>ret</i> :	Audī' <i>rent</i> .

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Heard, or, &c., heard.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Audiv' <i>erim</i> ,	Audiv'er' <i>imus</i> ,
2d, Audiv' <i>eris</i> ,	Audiv'er' <i>itis</i> ,
3d, Audiv' <i>erit</i> :	Audiv' <i>erint</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had, or, &c., heard.

*Sing.**Plur.*

1st, Audīvis'sem,	Audīvis'sē'mus,
2d, Audīvis'ses,	Audīvis'sē'tis,
3d, Audīvis'set:	Audīvis'sent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, or, &c., heard.

*Sing.**Plur.*

1st, Audiv'ēro,	Audīver'imus,
2d, Audiv'ēris,	Audīver'itis,
3d, Audiv'ērit:	Audiv'ērint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Hear, &c.

*Sing.**Plur.**No first person.*

2d, Au'di, or	} Audī'te, or	}
Audī'to, '	} Audī'tō'te,	}
3d, Audī'to:	Audīun'to.	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To hear, &c.

PRESENT.

Audī're.

PERFECT.

Audīvis'se.

FUTURE. Esse or fuisse Audītū'rus, --a, --um.

PARTICIPLES.

(Signs,) Hearing, &c.

PRESENT. Au'diens.

FUTURE. Audītū'rus, --a, --um.

GERUND.

(Signs,) Hearing, &c.

N., Audīen'dum,

G., Audīen'di, &c.

SUPINES.

(Signs,) To hear, &c.

FIRST. Audī'tum.

SECOND. Audī'tu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., heard.

Sing.

Plur.

1st, Au'dīor,

Audī'mur,

2d, Audī'ris, or }

Audim'ini,

Audī're,

3d, Audī'tur :

Audīun'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., heard.

Sing.

Plur.

1st, Audīē'bar,

Audīē'bā'mur,

2d, Audīē'bā'ris, or }

Audīē'bām'ini,

Audīē'bā're,

2d, Audīē'bā'tur :

Audīē'ban'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., or have been heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Sum or fui,		Sumus or fuimus,
2d,	Es or fuisti,		Estis or fuistis,
3d,	Est or fuit :		Sunt, fuerunt, or fuere.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had been heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Eram or fueram,		Erāmus or fueramus,
2d,	Eras or fueras,		Eratis or fueratis,
3d,	Erat or fuerat :		Erant or fuerant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., be heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Au'dīar,		Audīē'mur,
2d,	Audīē'ris, or		Audīem'ini,
	Audīē're,		
3d,	Audīē'tur :		Audīan'tur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., or may, &c. be heard.

*Sing.**Plur.*

1st, Au'dīar,

2d, Audīā'ris, or

Audīā're,

3d, Audīā'tur :

Audīā'mur,

Audīam'ini,

Audīan'tur.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., or might, &c., be heard.

*Sing.**Plur.*

1st, Audī'rer,

2d, Audī'rē'ris, or

Audī'rē're,

3d, Audī'rē'tur :

Audī'rē'mur,

Audī'rem'ini,

Audī'ren'tur.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Was, &c., or, &c., been heard.

*Sing.**Plur.*

1st, Sim or fuerim,

Simus or fuerimus,

2d, Sis or fueris,

Sitis or fueritis,

3d, Sit or fuerit :

Sint or fuerint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had, &c., or might, &c., been heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Essem or fuiss- sem, }	Essemus or fuisse- mus, }
2d,	Esses or fuisses,	Essetis or fuissetis,
3d,	Esset or fuisset :	Essent or fuissent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall, &c., been heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st,	Fuero,	Fuerimus,
2d,	Fueris,	Fueritis,
3d,	Fuerit :	Fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Be, &c., heard.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
	<i>No first person.</i>	
2d,	Audī're, or Audī'tor, }	Audim'nt,
3d,	Audī'tor :	Audīun'tor,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To be, &c., heard.

PRESENT.*Audī'ri.***PERFECT.***Esse or fuisse Audī'tus, --a, --um.***FUTURE.***Audī'tum Iri.***PARTICIPLES.**

(Signs,) Heard, &c.

▶ **PERFECT.** *Audī'tus, --a, --um.***FUTURE.** *Audī'en'dus, --a, --um.***RECAPITULATION OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.**See *amo.***RULES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.****ROOT.**

RULE. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation have for their root, the letters which precede *io*, the termination of the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, first person ; thus, *Audīō, audīs, audiebam, &c.*

TERMINATIONS.

RULE. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation have the same terminations, throughout, as *audio.*

INFLECTION.

RULE. To conjugate a verb of the fourth conjugation, add the terminations of *audio*, through all its parts, to the root of the given word.

Verbs to be conjugated by the preceding rules.

Mū'nō, fortify ; Fin'ō, finish ; Gar'rō, prate ; Dor'mō, sleep ; Sci'ō, know.

Recapitulation. See *amo*.

RECAPITULATION OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

1st Course of Questions. In what conjugation, voice, mood, tense, number, and person, do you find the termination *a* ?—*e* ?—*i* ?—*o* ?—*are* ?—*it* ?—*ent* ?—&c.

[Any order which the teacher prefers, may be adopted with the above questions ; and the order which is preferred, may or may not be shown beforehand to the pupil ;—regard being had to his years and capacity. The same method may be taken with the following questions.]

2d. What is the termination of the first conjugation, active voice, indicative mood, future tense, singular number, third person ?—of the third conj., act. voice, indic. mood, pres. tense, sing. num., first pers. ? &c.

3d. *Express in Latin*, They have.—Thou mayst hear, &c.

GENERAL RULES ON CONJUGATION.

RULE I. All regular verbs correspond in root, termination, and inflection, to the examples of their respective conjugations.

RULE II. The conjugation to which a verb belongs, is ascertained by its characteristic or distinguishing letter.

Explan. The characteristic letter of a verb, is that which precedes the syllable *re*, the termination of the active voice, infinitive mood, present tense.

RULE III. The termination of the first conjugation, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, is *a're*. The characteristic letter, therefore, of the first conjugation, is *a* long.

RULE IV. The termination of the second conjugation, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, is *ē're*: the characteristic letter of the second conjugation, is *e* long.

RULE V. The termination of the third conjugation, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, is *ē're*: the characteristic letter of the third conjugation, is *e* short.

RULE VI. The termination of the fourth conjugation, active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, is *i're*: the characteristic letter of the fourth conjugation, is *i* long.

Note. The following method is accordingly adopted, to denote the conjugation to which a verb belongs. The act., infin., pres., is placed immediately after the indic. pres.; thus, *amo, amare*, or, by root and termination, *amo, --ā're*. The characteristic letter, and, consequently, the conjugation, is thus immediately shown; so that the manner of designating the conjugation of a verb, bears a resemblance to that of designating the declension of a substantive by its sing. nom. and gen.

Recapitulation.

What is the first general rule on conjugation? How do you ascertain the conjugation to which a verb belongs? What is the characteristic letter of a verb? What is the termination of the first conjugation, act. voice, infin. mood, pres. tense?—of the same voice, mood and tense, of the second?—of the third?—of the fourth? What is the characteristic letter of the first conjugation?—of the second?—of the third?—of the fourth? What method is adopted to denote the conjugation to which a verb belongs? Mention an example. What does the manner of designating the conjugation of a verb resemble? Of what conjugation are the following verbs? *Sup'plico, --ā're*; *Dō'ceo, --ē're*; *Fū'gio, --ē're*; *Vē'nio, --i're*; *Sō'no, --ā're*; *Rid'eo, --ē're*; *Lū'o, --ē're*; *Sen'tio, --i're*.

THE FORMATION OF TENSES, &c.

Explan. By the *formation* of tenses is meant the manner in which the terminations are *formed*, or *made*, from one another.

OBSERV. I. In the formation of the parts of a verb, the tenses are divided into principal and subordinate.

Explan. The principal are those from which others are formed : the subordinate, those which are formed from others.

OBSERV. II. The principal parts of a verb are four :—the Active voice, Indicative mood, Present tense ; the Active, Indicative, Perfect ; the First Supine ; and the Active, Infinitive, Present :

RULE I. From the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, are formed,

1st, in the first and second conjugations, the active, subjunctive, present ; as, *Amo, amem ; habeo, habeam* :

2d, in the third and fourth conjugations, the active, indicative, future, and the active, subjunctive, present ; as, *Lego, legam ; audio, audiam*.

RULE II. From the active, indicative, perfect, are formed in all the conjugations,

1st, the active, indicative, pluperfect ; as, *Amavi, amaveram ; habui, habueram ; legi, legeram ; audiui, audiveram* :

2d, the active, subjunctive, perfect ; as, *Amavi, amaverim ; habui, habuerim ; legi, legerim ; audiui, audiverim* :

3d, the active, subjunctive, pluperfect ; as, *Amavi, amavissem ; habui, habuissem ; legi, legissem ; audiui, audivissem* :

4th, the active, subjunctive, future ; as, *Amavi*, *amavero* ; *habui*, *habuero* ; *legi*, *legero* ; *audivi*, *audivero* :

5th, the active, infinitive, perfect ; as, *Amavi*, *amavisse* ; *habui*, *habuisse* ; *legi*, *legisse* ; *audivi*, *audivisse*.

RULE III. From the first supine are formed in all the conjugations,

1st, the second supine ; as, *Amatum*, *amatu* ; *habitum*, *habitu* ; *lectum*, *lectu* ; *auditum*, *auditu* :

2d, the active participle of the future tense ; as, *Amatum*, *amaturus* ; *habitum*, *habiturus* ; *lectum*, *lecturus* ; *auditum*, *auditurus* :

3d, the passive participle of the perfect tense ; as, *Amatum*, *amatus* ; *habitum*, *habitus* ; *lectum*, *lectus* ; *auditum*, *auditus*.

RULE IV. From the active, infinitive, present, are formed,

1st, in all the conjugations, the active, indicative, imperfect ; as, *Amare*, *amabam* ; *habere*, *habebam* ; *legere*, *legebam* ; *audire*, *audiebam* :

Exception. When a verb of the third conjugation ends in *io*, in the active, indicative, present, the indicative imperfect is not formed from the infinitive present, but from the indicative present ; as, *Capio*, *capiebam* : not *capere*, *capebam*.

2d, in the first and second conjugations, the active, indicative, future ; as, *Amare*, *amabo* ; *habere*, *habebo* :

3d, in all the conjugations, the active, subjunctive, imperfect ; as, *Amare*, *amarem* ; *habere*, *haberem* ; *legere*, *legerem* ; *audire*, *audirem* :

4th, in all the conjugations, the active, impera-

tive ; as, *Amare*, *ama* ; *habere*, *habe* : *legere*, *lege* ; *audire*, *audi* :

5th, in all the conjugations, the active participle of the present tense ; as, *Amare*, *amans* ; *habere*, *habens* ; *legere*, *legens* ; *audire*, *audiens* :

6th, in all the conjugations, the gerund ; as, *A-mare*, *amandum* ; *habere*, *habendum* ; *legere*, *legendum* ; *audire*, *audiendum* :

7th, in all the conjugations, the passive participle of the future tense ; as, *Amare*, *amandus* ; *habere*, *habendus* ; *legere*, *legendus* ; *audire*, *audiendus*.

RULE V. The tenses of the passive voice are formed from the corresponding tenses of the active.

Except the passive, indicative perfect, and pluperfect : the subjunctive, perfect, pluperfect, and future ; and the infinitive, perfect, which are formed from the first supine.

OBSERV. III. The active, indicative, present, may be considered as the theme, or root, from which all other parts, principal and subordinate, are derived.

OBSERV. IV. The formation of the parts of a verb, consist in the following changes of terminational letters.

Explan. By changes is meant the removing of certain terminational letters, and the substituting of others.

When the principal parts of a verb are reduced to one, viz., the active, indicative, present, *O*, *EO*, or *IO*, the final letters of that part, are changed,

1st, in the active, indicative, perfect, into *avi*, for the first conjugation ; as, *Amo*, *amavi* : into *ui*, for the second ; as, *Habeo*, *habui* : into *i*, for the third ; as *Lego*, *legi* : into *ivi*, for the fourth ; as, *Audio*, *audiui*.

2d, in the first supine, into *atum*, for the first conjugation ; as, *Amo*, *amatum* : into *itum*, for the second ; as, *Habeo*, *habitum* : into *um*, with one or more preceding letters, for the third ; as, *Lego*, *lectum*, (contracted from *legitum*) : into *itum*, for the fourth ; as, *Audio*, *auditum*.

3d, in the active, infinitive, present, into *are*, for the first conjugation ; as, *Amo*, *amare* : into *e're*, for the second ; as, *Habeo*, *habere* : into *ere*, for the third ; as, *Lego*, *legere* : into *ire*, for the fourth ; as, *Audio*, *audire*.

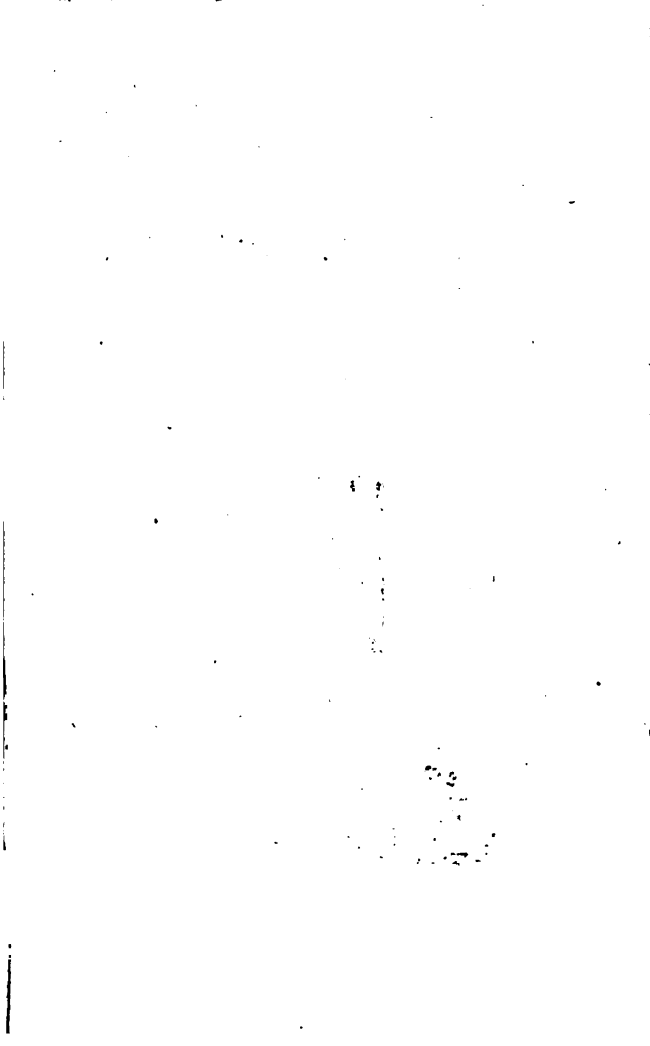
When four principal parts are used, the following changes occur.

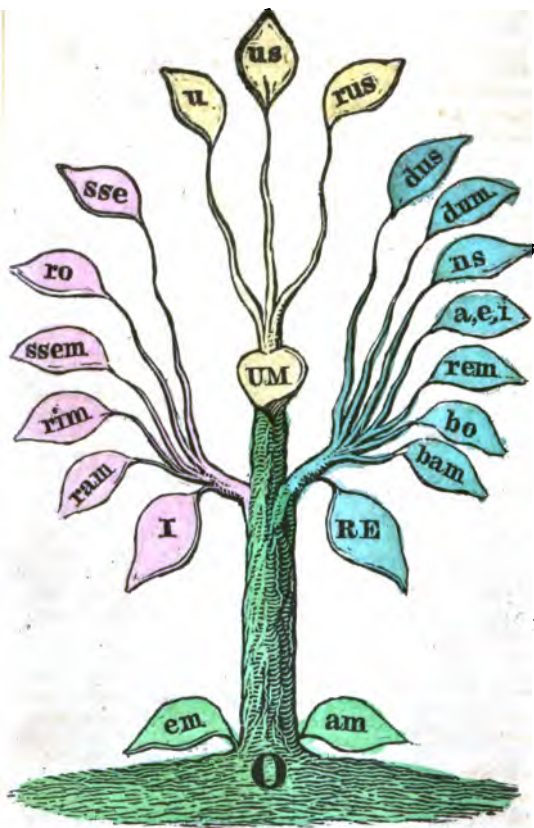
1st, *O* is changed, in the first conjugation, into *em*, for the active, subjunctive, present ; as, *Amo*, *amem* : in the second, into *am*, for the active, subjunctive, present ; as, *Habeo*, *habeam* : and in the third and fourth, into *am*, for the active, indicative, future, and the active, subjunctive, present ; as, *Lego*, *legam* ; *Audio*, *audiam* ; and, in verbs of the third conjugation, ending in *io*, in the act. indic. pres., into *ebam*, for the act., indic., imperf. ; as, *Capio*, *capiebam*.

2d, *I*, the final letter of the active, indicative, perfect, is changed, in all the conjugations, into *eram*, for the active, indicative, pluperfect ; as, *Amavi*, *amaveram* ; *Habui*, *habueram* ; *Legi*, *legeram* ; *Audivi*, *audiveram* : into *erim*, for the active, subjunctive, perfect ; as, *Amavi*, *amaverim*, &c. : into *issem*, for the active, subjunctive, pluperfect ; as, *Amavi*, *amavissem*, &c. : into *ero*, for the active, subjunctive, future ; as, *Amavi*, *amavero*, &c. : into *isse*, for the active, infinitive, perfect ; as, *Amavi*, *amavisse*, &c.

3d, *UM*, the termination of the first supine, is changed, in all the conjugations, into *u*, for the second supine ; as, *Amatum*, *amatu*, &c. : into *urus*, for the active participle of the future tense ; as, *Amatum*, *amaturus*, &c. : into *us*, for the passive participle of the perfect tense ; as, *Amatum*, *amatus*, &c.

4th, *RE*, the termination of the active, infinitive, present, is changed in all the conjugations, (except verbs of the third ending in *io*, in the act., indic., pres.,) into *bam*, for the active, indicative, imperfect ; as, *Amare*, *amabam*, &c. : in the first and second conjugations, into *bo*, for the active, indicative, future ; as, *Amare*, *amabo* ; *Habere*, *habebo* : in all the conjugations, into *rem*, for the active, subjunctive, imperfect ; as, *Amare*, *amarem*, &c. : in the first conjugation, *are* is changed into *a* ; in the second and third, *ere* into *e*, and, in the fourth, *ire* into *i*, for the imperative mood ; as, *Amare*, *ama*, &c. : in all the conjugations, *RE* is changed into *ns*, for the active participle of the present tense ; as, *Amare*, *a-*





TREE OF FORMATION.

mans, &c.; *ndum* for the gerund; as, *Amare*, *amandum*, &c.; and *ndus* for the passive participle of the future tense; as, *Amare*, *amandus*.

The principal and the subordinate parts are arranged by their terminations, as follows.

From *O* are formed *am* and *em*.

From *I*, *ram*, *rim*, *ssem*, *ro*, and *sse*.

From *UM*, *u*, *rus*, and *us*.

From *RE*, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, or *i*, *ns*, *dum*, *dus* :

as illustrated by the *Tree of Formation*, on the opposite page.

Recapitulation.

What is meant by the formation of tenses? How are the tenses divided in the formation of the parts of a verb? What are the principal? What the subordinate? How many principal parts are there? Name them.

Mention the parts which are formed from the active, indicative, present, and give examples:—from the act. indic. perf.:—from the first supine:—from the act. infin. pres. What exception to Rule IV.? How are the tenses of the passive voice formed? What exception is there to this rule? What part may be considered as the theme of every regular verb? What is meant by the word *theme*?

In what does the formation of the parts of a verb consist? What is meant by changes of terminational letters? Mention, with examples, the changes of termination which take place, when the principal parts of a verb are reduced to one. Mention, with examples from all the conjugations, the changes that occur, when four principal parts are used.

Arrange the principal and the subordinate parts of a verb by their terminations. Copy on a slate, or on paper, the tree of formation. Recite from your copy, 1st, the terminations, in the following way: From *O* are formed *em* and *am*, &c. 2d, Designate the parts for which the terminations stand: From the active indic. pres., are formed, &c. 3d, Mention the changes of termination which take place in forming every part, and give examples.

Form the tenses, &c. of *amo*—*habeo*—*lego*—*audio*—of all the verbs that are prescribed to be conjugated like them. Form the tenses, &c. of the following verbs, which, though

they deviate from the rules on root and termination, are regular in the formation of their parts.

Do, dē'di, dā'tum, dā're. Cū'bo, cū'bui, cū'bītum, cubā're. Sē'co, sec'ui, sec'tum, secā're. Frī'co, fric'ui, fric'tum, fricā're. Sor'bēo, sor'bui, sorp'tum, sorbē're. Vid'ēo, vī'di, vī'sum, vīdē're. Jū'bēo, jus'si, jus'sum, ju'bē're. Pen'dēo, pen'di, pen'sum, pendē're. Fō'dīo, fō'di, fos'sum, fod'ē're. Cā'pio, cē'pi, cap'tum, cap'ere. Rā'pio, rap'ui, rap'tum, rap'ere. Cū'pio, cupi'vi, cūpī'tum, cūpē're. Fāl'lo, fēfel'li, fāl'sum, fāl'lē're. Lū'do, lū'si, lū'sum, lū'dere. Cer'no, crē'vi, crē'tum, cer'nē're. Sēpē'līo, sepēlī'vi, sēpul'tum, sepēlī're. Vē'nīo, vē'ni, ven'tum, vēnī're. Sen'tīo, sen'si, sen'sum, senti're. Āpē'rīo, āper'ui, āper'tum, āpē'rī're.

Note. The principal parts are usually arranged in the above order, when the formation of the tenses, &c., is intended. But as the act. infin. pres. contains the characteristic letter, and, consequently, determines the conjugation, the principal parts are often presented in the following order: *Do, dā're, dedi, datum; Cubo, --ā're, --ui, --itum.*

FORMATION OF PERSONS.*

OBSERV. The second and third persons of the singular number, and all the persons of the plural number, are formed from the first person of the singular number.

RULE I. The singular second person is formed, in the *active voice*,

1st, in all tenses which terminate in *o*, in the singular first person, by changing *o* into *a* or *i*, and adding *s*. The following are the parts in which the

* The formation of the persons, though commonly overlooked in Latin grammar, will be found a very beneficial exercise to the learner; as it will be of great assistance in securing a close attention to the minutest points of orthography, connected with the etymology of verbs.

changes take place: the first and third conjugations, active voice, indicative mood, present tense; as, *Amo, amas*; *lego, legis*: first and second conjugations, active voice, indicative mood, future tense; as, *Amabo, amabis*; *Docebo, docebis*: all conjugations, active voice, subjunctive mood, future tense; as, *Amavero, amaveris*, &c.

Exception. The second and fourth conjugation, and the third, when it terminates in *io*, in the active, indicative, present, reject *o*, and add *s*; as, *Habeo, habes*, &c.

2d, in the indicative mood, perfect tense, the singular number, second person, is formed, in all the conjugations, by adding the letters *isti* to the singular number, first person; as, *Amavi, amavisti*, &c.

3d, in all tenses which end in the letter *m*, in the singular number, first person, by changing *m* into *s*. The following are the parts in which the change is made: all conjugations, active voice, indicative, imperfect, and pluperfect; subjunctive, present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect; as, *Amabam, amabas*, &c.

Exception. The third and fourth conjugations, active indicative future, change *a* into *e*, before changing *m* into *s*; as, *Legam, leges*, &c.

In the *passive voice*,

1st, in all tenses which end in *or*, in the singular number, first person, by changing *o* into *a* or *e*, and adding *is* or *e*. The following are the parts in which this change, and this addition, are made: first and third conjugations, passive voice, indicative mood, present tense; as, *Amor, amaris* or *amare*: *Legor, legeris* or *legere*: first and second conjugations, passive voice, indicative mood, future tense; as, *Amabor, amaberis*, &c.

Exception. The second and fourth conjugation, in the passive indicative present, reject *o*, and add *is* or *e*; as *Habeor*, *haberiis*, &c.

2d, in all tenses which end in *ar* and *er*, by adding *is* or *e*. The following are the parts which are thus formed: all conjugations, passive indicative imperfect; and subjunctive present and imperfect; as, *Amabar*, *amabaris*, &c.

Exception. The third and fourth conjugations, passive indicative future, change *a* into *e*, before adding *is* or *e*; as, *Legar*, *legeris*, &c.

RULE II. The singular third person is formed by making, in all the conjugations, throughout the active voice, the same changes as in the formation of the singular second person, and by adding *t*, instead of *s* and *sti*; thus, *Amo*, *amas*, *amat*, &c. In the passive voice, it is formed, in all the conjugations, throughout the tenses mentioned above, by the same changes as the singular number, second person, (with the exception that, besides making those changes, it cuts off *r*, the final letter of the singular first person,) and by adding the syllable *tur*; thus, *Amor*, *amaris* or *amare*, *amatur*.

Except the third conjugation, passive indicative present, which changes *o* into *i*; as *Legor*, *legitur*.

RULE III. The plural first person is formed by making, in all conjugations, throughout their voices, the same changes as for the singular third person, and by adding, in the active voice, *mus*, and in the passive, *mur*; as, *Amo*, *amat*, *amamus*; *amor*, *amatur*, *amamur*, &c.

RULE IV. The plural second person is formed by making, in all the conjugations, throughout their

voices, the same changes as for the singular third person, and by adding, in the active voice, *tis*, and in the passive, *mini*; as, *Amo, amat, amatis; amor, amatur, amamini*.

Except the active indicative perfect, which adds *stis*; as, *Amavi, amavit, amavistis*.

RULE V. The plural third person is formed by making, in all the conjugations, throughout their voices, the same changes as for the singular third person, and by adding, in the active voice, *nt*, and in the passive, *ntur*; as, *Amo, amat, amanti; amor, amatur, amantur*.

Except the active indicative perfect, which adds *erunt* or *ere*, after cutting off *i*-final of the sing. num., first pers.; thus, *Amavi, amaverunt* or *amavere*.

Recapitulation.

From what person are all the others formed? Mention, with examples, the manner in which the singular second person is formed. [When the examples are mentioned, they should be spelled; and the change and addition should be minutely stated. The exceptions and their examples should be stated in the same way. Where the contraction "*&c.*" is used in the book, the examples should always be completed by the pupil.] Mention, in the same way, the formation of the singular third person,—the plur. num., first person,—second,—third.

Section II.—Deponent, Common, and Neuter-Passive, Verbs.

DEFINITION I. *Deponent* verbs are those which have a *passive form*, but an *active* or a *neuter signification*; as, *Mē'reor*, deserve; *Læ'tor*, rejoice.

Explan. These verbs are called *deponent*, (laying aside,) because, in the early state of the Latin language, such verbs

had a double signification: one active, the other passive. The latter of these significations they afterwards laid aside.

DEFIN. II. *Common* verbs are those which have a passive form, but a signification *common* to both voices; that is, either active or passive; as, *Crim'inor*, to accuse or to be accused.

DEFIN. III. *Neuter-passive* verbs are those which are either, 1st, active in form, and passive in signification, as *Ex'ulo*, to be banished: or, 2d, partly active, and partly passive, in form, but active or neuter in signification; as, *Au'deo*, *ausus sum*, *audē're*, to dare.*

Explan. These verbs are called *neuter-passives*, because they are partly *neuter*, and partly *passive*, in form and signification.

RULE I. Most deponent and common verbs are regular in their form, and conjugated by the rules on root, termination, and inflection, of the conjugation to which they belong; thus, *Lætor*, *lætatus sum*, *lætari*.

Note. Deponent verbs and neuter-passives of the second class, have sometimes an active, infinitive, future; active participles, present and future; and the gerund; as, *Rever'tor*, *reversus sum*, *rever'ti*, *esse reversū'rus*, *rever'tens*, *reversū'rus*, *reverten'dum*.

RULE II. Neuter-passive verbs are regular in formation, though not in root, &c., and are like active verbs, in those parts which are formed from the act. indic. pres., and the act. infin. pres., and like passive verbs, in those parts which are formed from the indicative perfect; thus, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, *audere*, *audebam*, *audeam*, *ausus eram*, &c.

* Neuter passives are commonly irregular in root, and will therefore be found in the Appendix.

Deponent, Common, and Neuter-Passive Verbs, to be conjugated by the preceding rules.

Lætor ; *Mereor*, *meritus sum*, *mereri* ; *Revertor*, (return ;)
Pō'tior, *potītus sum*, *pōtī'ri*, (possess ;) *Sē'quor*, *secū'tus sum*,
sē'qui, (follow ;) *Ex ulō*, --*avi*, --*atum*, --*are* ; *Crim'īnor*, --*atus*
sum, --*āri* ; *Audeo*, &c.

Recapitulation.

What are deponent verbs ? Give examples. What does the word *deponent* signify ? Why are these verbs called deponent ? What are common verbs ? Mention an example. What are neuter-passive verbs ? Give examples. Why are these verbs called neuter-passive ? Are deponent and common verbs regular or irregular in their form ? How are they conjugated ? What parts of the active voice do some of these verbs sometimes assume ? In what respect are neuter-passive verbs regular ? In what, irregular ? How are they conjugated ? Give an example.

What kind of verb is *lætor* ? By what rule do you conjugate deponent verbs ? Of what conjugation is *lætor* ? Conjugate it, with the English of its parts, throughout. [The other examples should be taken in the same way ; and a selection of the questions and exercises should be made from the recapitulations of *amo*.]

*Section III.—Irregular Verbs of the Second Class.**

DEFINITION. Irregular verbs of the second class are distinguished by one of two peculiarities, and sometimes by both :—either they have no characteristic letter, in the infinitive present, by which

* Irregular verbs of the first class, are those which, in the act. indic. perf., or in the first supine, deviate from the rules on root, termination, and inflection, which are laid down under the four conjugations of regular verbs. Irregular verbs of the first class, are alphabetically arranged in the Appendix.

they could be classed as belonging to any of the regular conjugations ; as *Esse*, to be ; or they deviate, in some of their parts, from the rules of formation, which are laid down under regular verbs ; thus, *Ire*, to go, has, for its gerund, *Eundum*.

Explan. It is from these irregularities that such verbs have obtained the name of *irregular verbs*.

1st. SUM.

Note. This verb, and a few of similar signification, are sometimes called *substantive verbs* ; because, as they express existence ; or being, merely, they represent, as it were, the *substance* which is the basis, or foundation, of the *qualities* of action, &c., which are expressed by other verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular Number.

- Persons.* 1st, (Ego) Sum, I am,
2d, (Tu) Es, Thou art,
3d, (Ille, -a, -ud,) Est, He, she, or it, is :

Plural Number.

- 1st, (Nos) Sū'mus, We are,
2d, (Vos) Estis, Ye or you are,
3d, (Illi, -æ, -a,) Sunt, They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st, E'ram, I was, | E'rā'mus, We were, |
| 2d, E'ras, Thou wast, | E'rā'tis, Ye or you were, |
| 3d, E'rat, He, &c., was : | E'rant, They were. |

[In this and the following tenses, the pronoun should be supplied by the pupil.]

PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.

- 1st, Fū'i, I *was* or *have been*,
 2d, Fūis'ti, Thou *wast* or *hast been*,
 3d, Fū'it, He, &c., *was* or *has been*:

Plur.

- 1st, Fū'imus, We *were* or *have been*,
 2d, Fūis'tis, Ye or you *were* or *have been*,
 3d, Fūē'runt or fūē're, They *were* or *have been*.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing.

- 1st, Fū'eram, I *had been*,
 2d, Fū'eras, Thou *hadst been*,
 3d, Fū'erat, He, &c., *had been* :

Plur.

- 1st, Fūērā'mus, We *had been*,
 2d, Fūērā'tis, Ye or you *had been*,
 3d, Fū'erant, They, &c., *had been*.

FUTURE.

Sing.

- 1st, E'ro, I *shall* or *will be*,
 2d, E'ris, Thou *shalt* or *wilt be*,
 3d, E'rit, He, &c., *shall* or *will be* :

Plur.

- 1st, Er'imus, We *shall* or *will be*,
 2d, Er'itis, Ye or you *shall* or *will be*,
 3d, E'runt, They *shall* or *will be*.

Recapitulation as in *amō*, except the questions on the terminations, which are not applicable to *Sum* ; as this verb is not an *example* of the conjugation of any class of verbs, but its own compounds.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.

- 1st, Sim, I *am*, or *may* or *can be*,*
 2d, Sis, Thou *art*, or *mayst* or *canst be*,
 3d, Sit, He, &c., *is*, or *may* or *can be* :

Plur.

- 1st, Sī'mus, We *are*, or *may* or *can be*,
 2d, Sī'tis, Ye or you *are*, or *may* or *can be*.
 3d, Sint, They *are*, or *may* or *can be*.

IMPERFECT.

Sing.

- 1st, Es'sem, I *was*, or *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be*,
 2d, Es'ses, Thou *wast*, or *mightst*, *couldst*, *wouldst*, or *shouldst be*,
 3d, Es'set, He *was*, or *might*, &c. :

Plur.

- 1st, Essē'mus, We *were*, or *might*, *could*, &c.
 2d, Essē'tis, Ye or you *were*, &c.
 3d, Es'sent, They *were*, &c.

PERFECT.

Sing.

- 1st, Fū'érim, I *was*, *have been*, or *may have been*.
 2d, Fū'éris, Thou *wast*, *hast been*, or *mayst have been*,
 3d, Fū'érit, He, &c., *was*, *has been*, &c. :

* See note on the act. subjunct. of *amo*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Es'se, *To be*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive, in the ac. case, comes before it,) *That I, &c., am, &c., was, &c.*

PERFECT.

Fuis'se, *To have been*, or, (when a pronoun or a substantive, in the ac. case, comes before it,) *That I, &c., was, &c., have been or had been.*

FUTURE.

Esse or fuisse Futū'rus, -a, -um, *To be, or to have been, about to be*, or, (when a pronoun, &c.,) *That I, &c., will or would be, or will or would have been.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Futū'rus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Recapitulation. See amo.

Note 1st. The following compounds of *sum*, are conjugated by prefixing a syllable to *sum*, throughout its parts : *Adsum*, I am present ; *Absum*, I am absent or distant ; *Desum*, I am wanting ; *Inter'sum*, I intervene ; *Præsum*, I am over, preside, or command ; *Obsum*, I withstand or oppose ; *Super'sum*, I remain.

2d. *Prosum*, I do good, or avail, has the letter *d* prefixed to all those parts of *sum*, which begin with *e* ; thus,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.		Plur.
1st, <i>Prō'sum</i> ,		<i>Prō'sumus</i> ,
2d, <i>Prod'es</i> ,		<i>Prodes tis</i> ,
3d, <i>Prod'est</i> :		<i>Prō'sunt</i> .

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Prod'eram,		Proderā'mus,
2d, Prod'éras,		Proderā'tis,
3d, Prod'érat :		Prod'érant.

All other parts in the same manner ; thus,

PERFECT, Prof'ui ; PLUPERFECT, Profū'éram ; FUTURE, Prod'éro. SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT, Prō'sim ; IMPERFECT, Prōdes'sem ; PERFECT, Profū'érim, &c.

Recapitulation, (with the exception of terminations,) See *amo*.

3d. *Pot'sum*, I am able, prefixes the syllable *pos*, to all those parts of *sum* which begin with the letter *s*,—*pot*, to all parts which begin with a vowel, or with the letter *f*, and cuts off that letter, before prefixing *pot* ; thus,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Pot'sum,	Pot'sūmus,
2d, Pō'tes,	Pō'tes'tis,
3d, Pō'test :	Pot'sunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Pot'éram,	Pot'éramus,
2d, Pot'éras,	Pot'ératīs,
3d, Pot'érat :	Pot'érant.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Pot'ui,	Potū'imus,
2d, Potuīs'ti,	Potuīs'tis,
3d, Pot'uit :	Potūē'runt or potuē're.

All other parts are conjugated in a corresponding manner. Except the following.

INEINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Pot'se.

PERFECT.

Potdis'se.

FUTURE.

Not used.

PARTICIPLES.

Not used.

Recapitulation, the same, terminations excepted, as in amo.

2d. EO.**INDICATIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Go, do go, or am, &c., going.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Ē'o,		I'mus,
2d, Is,		I'tis,
3d, It:		Ē'unt.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Went, did go, or was or were going.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, I'bam,		ibā'mus,
2d, I'bas,		ibā'tis,
3d, I'bat:		I'bant.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Went, or Am, &c., gone.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, I'vi,		Iv'imus,
2d, Ivis'ti,		Ivis'tis,
3d, I'vit:		Ivē'runt or ivē're. }

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was or were gone, or had gone.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Iv'éram,		Ivérā'mus,
2d, Iv'éras,		Ivérā'tis,
3d, Iv'érat:		Iv'érant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or will go.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, I'bo,		Ib'imus,
2d, I'bis,		Ib'itis,
3d, Ibit:		I'bunt.

[Every mood, &c., of the irregular verbs, should, with the exception of terminations, be recapitulated like the corresponding parts of *amo*.]

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Go, or may or can go, or be going.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, E'am,		Eā'mus,
2d, E'as,		Eā'tis,
3d, E'at:		E'ant.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Went, did go, was or were going, or might, could, &c., go.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, I'rem,		Irē'mus,
2d, I'res,		Irē'tis,
3d, I'ret:		I'rent.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Went, or, &c., gone, or may be gone.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Iv'érím,		iver'imus,
2d, Iv'érís,		iver'itis,
3d, Iv'érít:		Iv'érint.

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Was or were gone, had gone, or might, &c., be gone, or have gone.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, ívis'sém,		ívis'sē'mus,
2d, ívis'ses,		ívis'sē'tis,
3d, ívis'set:		ívis'sent.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or will be gone.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Iv'éro,		iver'imus,
2d, Iv'érís,		iver'itis,
3d, Iv'érít:		Iv'érint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Go, do go, or let go.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>No first person,</i>		
2d, I or í'te,		í'te or ítō'te,
3d, í'to:		Éun'to.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) To go, &c.

PRESENT. í're.**PERFECT.** ívis'se.

FUTURE. Esse or fuisse itū'rus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

I'ens, *Genitive*, Eun'tis, *Dat.* Eun'ti, &c.

FUTURE. Itū'rus, -a, -um.

GERUND.

(Signs,) Going, &c.

N., Eun'dum,

G., Eun'di, &c.

SUPINES.

(Signs,) To go, &c.

FIRST. I'tum.

SECOND. I'tu.

Observ. The following are the compounds of *eo*: Ad'eo, go or repair to; Ab'eo, go away; Ex'eo, go out; Ob'eo, meet or encounter; Sub'eo, go up or approach; Per'eo, perish; Cō'eo, unite; In'eo, enter; Præ'eo, Antē'eo, precede; Prod'eo, betray; Vē'neo, --ire, --ii, (supine not used,) To be sold.

Note. These verbs are conjugated by merely prefixing a syllable to *eo*, throughout its moods and tenses.

Except in the *perfect*, and the tenses which are formed from it, in which the compounds throw out the letter *v*; thus, Ad'ī, ad'īsti, adi'eram, adi'erim, instead of Adī'vi, &c.; and the *supine*, and the parts which are formed from it, in which the letter *i* is pronounced short; as Ad'ītum, &c.

sd. QUEO, I can,

and NEQUEO, (its compound,) I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, throughout.

Except their imperative mood, and their gerunds, which are not found, and their participles, which are seldom used.

4th. VOLO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Wish, will, or am, &c., willing.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vō'lo,		Vol'ūmus,
2d, Vis,		Vul'tis,
3d, Vult:		Vō'lunt.

IMPERFECT.

(Signs,) Wished, would, or was, &c., willing.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vōlē'bam,		Vōlē'bā'mus,
2d, Vōlē'bas,		Vōlē'bā'tis,
3d, Vōlē'bat:		Vōlē'bant.

PERFECT.

(Signs,) Wished, would, or was or were willing.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vol'ūi,		Vōlū'īmus,
2d, Volūis'ti,		Voldis'tis,
3d, Vol'ūit:		Volūē'runt, or } Volūē're. }

PLUPERFECT.

(Signs,) Had wished, or had been willing.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vōlū'eram,		Vōlūērā'mus,
2d, Vōlū'eras,		Vōlūērā'tis,
3d, Vōlū'erat:		Vōlū'érant.

FUTURE.

(Signs,) Shall or will wish or be willing.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vō'lam,		Vōlē'mus,
2d, Vō'les,		Vōlē'tis,
3d, Vō'let:		Vō'lent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vē'lim,		Vēlī'mus,
2d, Vē'lis,		Vēlī'tis,
3d, Vē'lit:		Vē'lint.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Vel'lem,		Vellē'mus,
2d, Vel'les,		Vellē'tis,
3d, Vel'let:		Vel'lent.

PERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Volū'erim,		Volder'imus,
2d, Volū'eris,		Voluer'itis,
3d, Volū'erit:		Volū'erint.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1st, Volūis'sem,		Volūis'sē'mus,
2d, Volūis'ses,		Volūis'sē'tis,
3d, Volūis'set:		Volūis'sent.

* The learner will now be able to supply the signs himself.

FUTURE.

Sing.

1st, Vólū'éro,

2d, Vólū'éris,

3d, Vólū'erit :

Plur.

Volúer'imus,

Volúer'itis,

Volū'erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRRS. Vel'le.*PERF.* Volúis'se.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. Vólens.*Other parts not used.*

5th. NOLO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., unwilling.

Sing.

1st, Nō'lo,

2d, Non'vis,

3d, Non'vult :

Plur.

1st, Nol'amus,

2d, Nonvul'tis,

3d, Nō'lunt.

*IMPERFECT.**Sing.*

1st, Nólē'bam,

2d, Nólē'bas, &c.

*Plur.*1st, Nólē'bā'mus, &c., like *Volo*.*PERFECT.*

Nol'ui, --uisti, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Nólū'eram, --ū'eras, &c.

FUTURE.

Nō'lam, --es, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**PRESENT.**

Nō'lim, --is, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Nol'lem, --les, &c.

PERFECT.

Nolū'ērim, --ū'ēris, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Nolūis'sem, --ūis'ses, &c.

FUTURE. Nolū'ēro, --ū'ēris, &c.**IMPERATIVE MOOD.***Sing.**Plur.**No first person,*

2d, Nō'li or	} Nōlī'te or }
Nōlī'to :	

INFINITIVE MOOD.**PRESENT.** Nol'le.**PERF.** Nolūis'se.**PARTICIPLE.**

Nō'lens.

*Other parts not used.***6th. MALO.****INDICATIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**

(Signs,) Am, &c. more willing, or would rather.

Sing. Mā'lo, mā'vis, mā'vult :*Plur.* Mal'ūmus, māvul'tis, mā'lunt.**IMPERFECT.**

Mālē'bam, --ē'bas, &c.

PERFECT.

Mal'ui, --uis'ti, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Mälû'eram, --û'eras, &c.

FUTURE.

Mä'lam, --es, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Mä'lim, --is, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Mal'lem, --les, &c.

PERFECT.

Mälû'ërim, --û'ëris, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Mälûis'sem, uis'ses, &c.

FUTURE.

Mälû'ëro, --û'ëris, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. Mal'le.

PERF. Mälûis'se.

Other parts not used.

7th. FERO.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Bear, bring, or suffer, or do bear, &c.

Sing. Fë'ro, fers, fert :

Plur. Fer'imus, fer'tis, fë'runt.

IMPERF.

Fërë'bam, --ë'bas, &c.

PERF.

Tû'li, --isti, &c.

PLUPERF.

'Tû'lëram, --ëras, &c.

FUTURE.

Fë'ram, --es, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Fē'ram, --as, &c.

IMPERF.

Fer'rem, fer'res, &c.

PERF.

Tū'lērim, --ēris, &c.

PLUPERF.

Tūlis'sem, --is'ses, &c.

FUTURE. Tū'lēro, --ēris, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.

Plur.

No first person,

2d, Fer or fer'to,

Fer'te or fertō'te,

3d, Fer'to :

Fērun'to.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.

Fer're.

PERF.

Tūlis'se.

FUT. Esse or fuisse Lātū'rus, --a, --um.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Fē'rens.

FUT. Lātū'rus, --a, --um.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Nom., Fēren'dum,

FIRST. Lā'tum.

Gen., Fēren'di, &c.

SECOND. Lā'tu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. Fē'ror, fer'ris or fer're, fer'tur :

Plur. Fer'īmur, ferim'ini, fērun'tur.

IMPERF.

PERF.

Fērē'bar, -ē'bā'ris, &c. Lā'tus, -a, -um, Sum, &c.

PLUP.

FUT.

Latus, -a, -um, Eram, &c. Fē'rar, -eris, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

IMPERF.

Fē'rar, -aris, &c. Fer'rer, ferrē'ris, &c.

PERF.

PLUP.

Latus, -a, -um, Sim, &c. Latus, -a, -um, Essem, &c.

Fut. Latus, -a, -um, Fuero, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.

Plur.

No first person,

2d, Fer're or fer'tor, | Fērim'ni,

3d, Fer'tor : | Fērun'tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Fer ri.

PERF. Lā'tus, -a, -um, Esse or fuisse.

FUT. Lā'tum Iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Latus, -a, -um. FUT. Fēren'dus, -a, -um.

Observ. *Fero* has the following compounds, which undergo a change in their first syllable : Af'fēro, at'tuli, allā'tum, affer're, (bring ;) Au'fēro, abs'tuli, ablā'tum, aufer're, (take away ;) Dif'fēro, dis'tuli, dylā'tum, differ're, (separate or differ ;) Con'fēro, con'tuli, collā'tum, confer're, (bring together ;) In'fēro, in'tuli, illā'tum, infer're, (bear ;) Of'fēro, ob'tuli, oblā'tum, offer're, (offer or present ;) Ef'fēro, ex'tuli, elā'tum, effer're, (bear away or bear out.)

The following compounds undergo no change in their first syllable : Circum'féro, circum'tuli, circumlā'tum, circumfer're, (carry round or encompass ;) Per'féro, (carry through or penetrate ;) Trans'féro, (transfer ;) Def'éro, (defer or bear away ;) Prof'éro, (present ;) Antef'éro, (anticipate ;) Præf'éro, (prefer.)

Note. All these verbs are conjugated by prefixing a syllable to *fero*, throughout its parts.

8th. FIO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(Signs,) Am, &c., made, done, or become.

Sing. Fī'o, fis, fit :

Plur. Fī'mus, fī'tis, fī'unt.

IMPERF.

Fīē'bam, --ē'bas, &c.

PERF.

Factus Sum, &c.

PLUP.

Factus Eram, &c.

FUT.

Fī'am, --es, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Fī'am, --as, &c.

IMPERF.

Fī'ērem, --ēres, &c.

PERF.

Factus Sim, &c.

PLUP.

Factus Essem, &c.

Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.**Plur.*

No first person,

2d, Fī or fī'to,

Fī'te or fītō'te,

3d, Fī'to :

Fīun'to.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Fi'eri.*PERF.* Esse or fuisse Factus, --a, --um.*FUT.* Factum Iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Factus, --a, --um.*FUT.* Fien'dus, --a, --um.

SUPINE.

FIRST. Not used.*SECOND.* Factu.

GENERAL OBSERVATION ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Some of the irregular verbs were originally regular, and passed into the irregular class, in consequence of contraction, by which they lost some of those letters that serve to distinguish regular verbs; thus, *Fero*: originally, *ferere*; contracted, *ferre*; originally, *feris*, *ferit*; contracted, *fers*, *fert*. The same is the case with several other parts.

Recapitulation. Did all the irregular verbs belong originally to that class? How did some of them become irregular? Give an example. Point out the other parts of *fero*, which are now found contracted.

Section IV.—Impersonal Verbs.

Explan. Impersonal signifies without person, and is used to designate that class of Latin verbs, which we do not find agreeing with any person, or nominative.

OBSERV. Some impersonal verbs are regular, and some, irregular; and, though they are used without reference to a nominative, they are always found in the sing. num., third person, but in no other; thus, *Act.*, indic., pres., *Delectat*, it delights; imperf., *Delectabat*, &c.

Note 1st. Verbs of this class are seldom used in the imperative mood. The subj. pres. is used instead of the imperative. The participles, gerunds, and supines, are very seldom found.

2d. Impersonal verbs are used in the infinitive mood, present and perfect tenses, in the *active* voice, and in all tenses of that mood, in the *passive* voice.

3d. In the pass. voice, indic. mood, perf. tense, and in all the other compound tenses, the participle is used in the neuter gender only; as, *Pugnā'tum est*; *Pugnā'tum erat*, &c.

Observ. The conjugation of an impersonal verb corresponds, therefore, to the exercise of carrying the sing. num., third person, of a verb, through its voices, moods, &c.

Impersonal Verbs to be conjugated like the example of their respective conjugations.

Dēlec'tat, *dēlectā're*, it delights, &c.; *Dē'cet*, *dēcē're*, it becomes, &c.; *Contin'git*, *contin'gēre*, it happens, &c.; *Evē'nit*, *evēnī're*, it falls out, &c. These verbs occur in the active voice only.

Some of the irregular verbs are used impersonally; as, *Obest*, it hinders; *Prodest*, it avails; *Interest*, it concerns; *Fit*, it happens; *Refert*, it concerns.

The following are used in the passive voice only: *Pugna-tur*, *pugnatum est*, *pugnari*, it is fought, &c.; *Fāvē'tur*, *fautum est*, *fāvē'ri*, it is indulged, &c.; *Cur'rītur*, *cursum est*, *cur'ri*, it is run, &c.; *Vēnī'tur*, *ventum est*, *venī'ri*, it is come, &c.

Recapitulation.

What does the word *impersonal* signify? How is it used? How are impersonal verbs classified as to their form? In what person exclusively are they used? In what parts are they seldom used? What do you observe with regard to the infinitive mood of impersonal verbs? In a passive impersonal, of what gender is the participle of the compound tenses? To what does the conjugation of an impersonal verb correspond? [The recapitulation of the verbs prescribed for conjugation, should correspond to the first and the sixth courses of questions on the *active indicative* of *amo*.]

Section V.—Defective Verbs.

Explan. Defective verbs are those which are deficient in certain moods, tenses, &c.

OBSERV. I. Some defective verbs are regular, and some are irregular in their form.

II. The following three are seldom found in any other part than the *preterite*, or perfect tense, and those which are formed from it, and are therefore called *Preteritive* verbs. They correspond, in signification, either to the perfect, or to the present tense; thus,

1st. *Ō'di*, *hate, hated, or have hated*; *od'eram*, *odé'rim*, *ódis'sem*, *od'éro*, *ódis'se*.—This verb has, moreover, the following parts: *Participles*, *Ō'sus* and *ósū'rus*.

2d. *Mem'ini*, *remember, remembered, or have remembered*; *mèmin'eram*, *mèmin'èrim*, *memīnis'sem*, *mèmin'èro*, *memīnis'se*. *Imperative*, *Mèmen'to*: *mèmentō'te*.

3d. *Cæ'pi*, *begin, began, or have begun*; *cæp'eram*, *cæp'èrim*, *cæpis'sem*, *cæp'èro*, *cæpis'se*. *Supine*, *Cæp'tu*. *Participles*, *Cæp'tus*: *cæptū'rus*.

III. *Fū'rère*, to be mad; *Dā'ri*, to be given; *Fū'ri*, to speak; are not used in the indicative, present, sing. num., first person; and the last two are deficient in the same parts of the subjunctive mood.

IV. The following are deficient in many parts.

1st. *Aio*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Say, said, &c.

PRES. *Ā'io*, *ā'is*, *ā'it*:

ā'iunt.

IMP. Aĩē'bam, &c. throughout.

PERF. ais'ti.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. ā'ias, ā'iat: aĩā'tis, ā'iant.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. PARTICIPLE.

Ā'i.

Ā'iens.

2d. INQUAM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Say, said, &c.

PRES.

In'quam, -quis, -quit: -quimus, -quitis, -quiunt.

IMP. inquĩē'bat: inquĩē'bant.

PERF. inquis'ti,

FUT. in'quies, in'quĩ'et.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. PARTICIPLE.

In'que, in'quĩ'to.

In'quiens.

3d. FOREM.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(Signs,) Might be.

IMP. Fō'rem, fō'res, fō'ret: fōrē'mus, fōrē'tis, fō'-
[rent.

INFINITIVE.

Fō're, To be, to be about to be, or, &c., will or
would be.

4th.

The following seem to be irregularly contracted
parts of the verbs *au'dēo* and *fā'cĭo*:

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Au'sim, -sis, -sit.

PERF. Fax'im, fax'is, fax'it: fax'int.

FUT. Fax'o, fax'is, fax'it: faxī'tis, fax'int.

5th.

The following are used chiefly in the imperative mood :

Ā've or } āvē'te or } Hail! Infin. Avē're.
 āvē'to: } avē'tō'te. }

Sal've or } salvē'te or } Hail! „ Salvē're.
 salvē'to: } salvē'tō'te, }

Indic. fut. Salvē'bis.

Imperat., Sing. 2d pers., Cēdo :

Plur. Ced'ite, tell, give, or grant.

6th. QUÆSO.

Indic., pres., first pers., Sing. Quæ'so, I pray :

Plur. Quæ'sūmus.

Recapitulation.

What is meant by defective verbs ? How are defective verbs classified by their form ? In what tenses chiefly, are *odi*, *memini*, and *cæpi*, used ? What are these verbs called ? What do you remark of their signification ? What other parts has *odi*, besides those which properly belong to it, as a preteritive verb ? What other parts has *memini* ?—*cæpi* ? In what parts are *furere*, *dari*, and *fari*, deficient ? What parts has *aio* ? What parts of *aio* are not used ? What parts has *inquam* ? What parts are not found ? What parts do you find in *forem* ?—*ausim* ?—*faxim* ?—*faxo* ?—*ave* ?—*salvo* ?—*cedo* ?—*quæso* ?

The following table contains a comparison of the classification of Latin and English verbs.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
<i>Signification.</i>	<i>Signification.</i>
Active, Passive, Neuter: Transitive, Intransitive.	Active, Passive, Neuter: Transitive, Intransitive.
<i>Form, or Inflection.</i>	<i>Form, or Inflection.</i>
Regular, Irregular.	Regular, Irregular.
<i>Note.</i> English verbs are thus distinguished: those which in the act., indic., imperf., and in the participles of the perfect tense, end in <i>ed</i> , are <i>regular</i> ; all that end otherwise, in both or in one of these parts, are <i>irregular</i> .	<i>Note.</i> Latin verbs are distinguished by a <i>characteristic letter</i> , and by the <i>formation</i> of their parts: those which coincide with the rules on characteristic and formation, are <i>regular</i> ; those which do not, are <i>irregular</i> .
Defective, Impersonal, Neuter-Passive.*	Defective, Impersonal, Neuter-Passive, Deponent, Common.
*Examples. <i>He is gone.</i> <i>It is become, &c.</i>	<i>Note.</i> The last two have no corresponding <i>forms</i> in English. Their <i>signification</i> , however, is included under Active, Passive, and Neuter verbs.

Recapitulation.

What resemblance is there between Latin and English verbs, as to the classes into which they are divided by their signification? What difference is there in the classification of their forms? How are English regular verbs distinguished from irregular? How is the distinction made in Latin? In what respect do Latin deponent and common verbs correspond to English verbs? In what do they differ from English verbs?

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Observ. The use of the verb in syntax, is, to complete the expression of a thought ; or, in other words, to constitute a sentence ; thus, the phrase *Musa Thalia*, merely represents a person, and does not express a complete thought ; but if we add a verb to the phrase, we shall make a complete thought, or, in other words, a sentence ; thus, *Musa Thalia saltâvit.* (The muse Thalia danced.)

We are now come, therefore, to the *second department of syntax*, which relates to the *arrangement of words in sentences.*

Explan. The word *sentence*, is derived from the Latin substantive, *sententia*, (sentiment, opinion, or thought,) and is applied to the verbal expression of a thought.

Note. The difference between a sentence and a phrase, is this : The words which constitute a phrase, may or may not form a complete thought ; and indeed, most phrases express but part of a thought ; the words which constitute a sentence, always form a complete thought.

RULE I. A verb is of the same number and person as its nominative ; thus, *Ego lego. Illi legunt.*

Note. A verb is said, therefore, to *agree* with its nominative, in number and person.

Explan. By the *nominative* of a verb is meant the word which represents the person or thing spoken of. As this word expresses merely the *name* of a person or a thing, it must always be found in the *nominative* case. To show the relation between the verb and this word, the former is adapted to the latter, as far as a verb admits of being adapted to a noun or a pronoun ; that is to say, in *number* and *person*,—the only things in which a verb participates with nouns and pronouns, and the only things, therefore, in which they can *agree*, or by which their agreement can be shown. Hence the above rule.

Recapitulation. Of what number and person must a verb always be ? Give examples. How will you parse, syntactically, a personal verb ? Mention examples. Parse them.

Method of parsing. The nominative, whether a substantive or a pronoun, is parsed as formerly shown. The verb as follows : *Lego* is a verb *active*, and sometimes, *transitive* ; sometimes, *intransitive*, in signification : *regular* in *root* and *termination*, and in the formation of its parts :* *Lego*, --*ere*, --*i*, *lectum* : of the *third* conjugation, *active* voice, *indicative* mood, *present* tense. [Here the verb should be conjugated, first, throughout the *tense*, then throughout the *mood* and the *voice*, carrying throughout the latter parts, whatever person occurs in the lesson.] *Lego* is found in the *singular* number, *first* person, agreeing with its nominative, *ego*, according to Rule I. on the syntax of verbs : "A verb," &c.

Exercises.

Tu legis. Il'le stū'del. 2.† Pūel'la laudā'tur. 1.
 study girl praise
 Nos audī'mus. Vos docuis'tis, doceo. || Illi dix-
 hear
 erant: ‡ dico. Ā'vis --is vō'lat. 1. Ō'ves, (sing.
 fly sheep
 nom., --is,) bālā'bānt. Ē'quus, --i, hinnī'vit. 4.
 bleat horse neigh
 Lū'pi, s. n., --us, ulūlav'érant. Vitūm, --i, vītā-
 wolf howl vice shun
 bā'tur. Pub'lius, --i, Cras'sus, --i, legā'tus, --i, vē'-
 Publius Crassus lieutenant
 nit: venio ‡ Āriōvis'tus, --i, rex. ‡ Germānō'rum
 Ariovistus German

* *Root and terminations* should always be mentioned, as well as *formation*; for many verbs are regular in the latter, which are irregular in the former; thus, *Peto*, --*ere*, --*i'vi*, --*i'tum*, regular in formation, but irregular in termination.

† The conjugation of the verb is denoted by a figure, when the verb is regular in root and termination, and when the conjugation might not be easily distinguished.

|| Italics alone are henceforward used as guides to the themes.

négav'erat. Rom'ulus, --i, pri'mus, --a, --um, Ro-
 deny Romulus first Ro-
 mánō'rum, s. n., --us, --a, --um, rē'gum pugnā'vit.
 man fight
 Om'nes, s. n., --is, --is, --e, moriun'tur: morior. ‡
 All (men)
 Mul'tum, s. n., --us, --a, --um, argen'ti, s. n., --um,
 Much silver
 invēniē'bā'tur: ingenior. ‡

Note: The nominative with which the verb agrees, is not always expressed; thus, *Legit*, (he) reads.

Erat in'sciūs, --a, --um, cul'pæ. Ter'ra, --æ, fuit
 unconscious fault The land
 fē'raz, --ciſ, herbā'rum. Her'cules, --is, fortis'si-
 fruitful herb Hercules
 mus, pos., fortis, hom'īnum, vī'cit: vinco. ‡ Fīdē'-
 brave Faith-
 lis, --is, --e, hē'ro festīnā'vit. Fac'īnus, --oris, dig'-
 ful master hasten Deed
 num, --us, --a, --um, hōnō're, s. n., honos, contem-
 worthy honor
 nēbā'tur: contemno. ‡ Frē'ta, --us, --a, --um, fū'gā
 Trusting flight
 per'it: pereō. Trun'cus, --a, --um, lācer'tis, s. n.,
 [See p. 157.] Deprived
 --um, oppres'sus est: opprimo. ‡ Ver'bo, s. n., --um,
 arm overpower word
 dulciō'ra, pos., dulcis, --is, --e, mel'le, s. n., mel,
 sweet honey
 fluē'bant. ‡ Os --ris ejus fulgē'bat: fulgeo. ‡ Ma-
 Countenance shine
 nus ‡ illorum vinctæ sunt: vincio. ‡ Iste ē'quus
 vendēbā'tur: vendo. ‡ Hoc templum ædificab'itur.
 build
 Quis nostrum dī'cat? --o. ‡ Sol, --is, magnum, --us,
 The sun great

--a, --um, lū'men, --inis, mun'di, s. n., --us, appar'
 light world appear
 uit. Ser'vus, --i, vac'uus, --a, --um, pudō're, ‡ ā'-
 void
 mans, --tis, vī'nī, s. n., --um, tī'mens, --tis, flāgel'-
 fond wine dreading
 li, s. n., --um, inutilis, --is, --e, hero, cæd'itur : cæ-
 lash
 do. ‡ Pā'ter, --ris, Mar'ci, s. n., --us, Tul'lii, s. n.,
 The father Marcus Tullius
 --us, Cicerō'nis, disertis'simi, pos., disertus, Ro-
 Cicero eloquent
 manorum, mor'tuus est. Tuus āvun'culus, --i, vir,
 uncle man
 --i, egē'nus, --a, --um, pecū'niæ, præd'itus, --a,
 destitute money endowed
 --um, prob'itā'te, dig'nus, --a, --um, honō're, dé-
 probity worthy
 lec'tus est : delega. ‡

RULE II. Passive, intransitive, and neuter, verbs are sometimes followed by a nominative corresponding to the one which precedes them ; as, *Tu vocaris* 1. *Joannes --is*. Thou art called John.

Recapitulation. What case may follow passive, neuter, and intransitive verbs ? Mention an example. How will you parse a nominative case which follows a passive, an intransitive, or a neuter verb ? Give an example. Parse the example.

Exercises. Il'la incē'dit, --o, ‡ rēgī'na. Pas'tor,
 queen Shepherd
 --is, neg'līgus, --a, --um, dor'mit 4. supī'nus, --a,
 neglectful sleep supine
 --um. Cō'mes, --itis, ejus ca'dit, --o, ‡ prō'nus, --a,
 Companion prostrate
 --um. Ra'tio est glō'ria hom'inis. Pal'ma, --æ,
 Reason glory Palm

omnium. Dux nostri exer'citus, *s. n.*, --us, dē'bet 2
 of all (men) army ought
 esse par' cū'vis hostiūm, *s. n.*, --is.† Conten'tus,
 [See p. 80.] Content
 --a, um, sor'te, *s. n.*, sors, nolē'bat ire. Vir vac'ū-
 lot free
 us, --a, --um, cul'pā, pos'sit objurgā're. Quis ho-
 fault chide
 rum potest esse benign'ior, pos., benignus, meo pa-
 kind
 tre? *s. n.*, pater.
 father.

RULE IV. The infinitive mood has sometimes an accusative before it, and sometimes a corresponding accusative after it; as, *Dicit, --o,† te legere.* He says that you are reading. *Dicit te esse doctum.* He says that you are learned.

Recapitulation. What case do you sometimes find before the infinitive mood? Give an example. What case sometimes follows the infinitive mood? Give an example. How will you parse an infinitive mood preceded by an accusative?—preceded and followed by an accusative? Give examples. Parse the examples.

Note 1st. The English sign of the infinitive mood depends always on the tense of the foregoing verb; thus,

Dī'cit me scribere, he says that I *am* writing:

Dix'it me scribere, he said that I *wrote*, or that I *was* writing:

Dicūt me scripsisse, he says that I *have* written:

Dixit me scripsisse, he said that I *had* written:

Dicūt me esse scripturum, he says that I *am* about to write, or *will* write:

Dixit me esse scripturum, he said that I *was* about to write, or *would* write.

2d. The verb *esse* is not always expressed in the infinitive future; thus, *Dixit me scripturum.* He says that I will write.

Recapitulation. On what does the English sign of the infinitive mood depend? Mention examples. What word is sometimes omitted in the infinitive future? Give an example.

Exercises. *Dī'cunt, -o, ‡ se esse incol'umes, s. n., --is, --is, --e.* *Audivimus eum esse Romanum.*
safe

Putā'vi te posse vin'cere, --o, ‡ hostes. Cred'īdit,
think

credo, ‡ eos qui scrip'serant, scribo, ‡ esse amī'cos
friend

tuos. Legā'ti promīsē'runt, promitto, ‡ se itū'ros
The Ambassadors

esse. Scī'mus 4. eum vocā'ri rē'gem. Affir'mas 1.
know call affirm

ver ‡ esse jūcundis'simum tem'pus, --oris, totī'us,
season

--us, --a, --um, ‡ an'ni, --us. ‡ Vīdebā'mus, eo, ‡

om'nīa esse tū'ta, --us, --a, --um. Dī'co ‡ eam ve-
safe

nī're, --io. ‡ Dīcebā'tis eos dormī're 4. Fer'tur
sleep It is said

hostes vīdē'ri, video, armā'tos, --us, --a, --um. Pro-
armed

mīsīs'ti, promitto, ‡ te missū'rum, mitto, ‡ mihi ag-

num, s. n., --us. Pū'tat 1. vos mansū'ros, --eo. ‡
lamb. think

Spē'rant 1. om'nīa futū'ra fausta, s. n., --us, --a,
hope fortunate

--um. Audī'mus eum dic'ere, dico, ‡ se recāsātū'-
refuse.

rum.

RULE V. Transitive verbs, whether active, deponent, or common, govern an accusative; as, *Tam*

go lī'brum. I touch the book. *Seq'uimur, --or, te.*
We follow thee.

Exceptions. 1st. *Recor'dor*, (recollect,) *Mem'ni*, (remember,) *Reminis'cor*, (recollect,) and *Oblivis'cor*, (forget,) govern sometimes a *genitive*; as, *Recor'dor lectiō'nem* or *lectiō'nis*. I remember the lesson.

2d. *Misē'reor*, (pity,) *Miseres'co*, (compassionate,) and *Sat'āgo*, (to be occupied,) usually govern a *genitive*; as, *Misē're-re, --eo, civ'num tuo'rum!* Take pity on your fellow-citizens!

Recapitulation. What case do transitive verbs govern? Give examples. What verbs are excepted from this rule? What case do *recordor*, *memini*, and *obliviscor*, govern? Give an example. What case do *miserēor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern? Give an example. How do you parse an accusative case, dependent on a transitive verb? Mention an example. Parse the example. How do you parse the genitive case, when it depends on *recordor*, &c.? Give an example. Parse this example. How do you parse the genitive, when dependent on *miserēor*, &c.? Mention an example. Parse this example.

Exercises. *Dē'us* ‡ *creā'vit cœ'lum* : ‡ *finx'it*,
create
fin'go, ‡ *cor'pus hom'īnis* : *dē'dit do* ‡ *lū'nam*, *lu'-*
moon light
men noc'tis, *s. n., nox.* *Reverē're, imperat. of rev-*
night rev-
ereor, --eri, senēct'i'tem, s. n., senēctus. ‡ *Judex* ‡
erence
dē'bet 2. *sper'nēre, --o*, ‡ *au'rum, s. n., --um.* *Jū-*
ought gold.
bem'īni, --eo, ‡ *clau'dēre, --o, por'tas.* *Mæcē'nas,*
gate. *Mæcenas*
--ā'tis, vir qui merē'tur 2. *ēgrē'gias, s. n., --us, --a,*
merit distinguished
--um, lau'des, s. n., laus. *Boni amant pā'triam.*
praise Good (men) country
Om'nia, --is, --is, --e, bona sequun'tur, --or, ‡ *jus-*
all good (things)

tos, --us, --a, --um. Exer'citus, --us, ab'stulit au-
fero, mul'tum, --us, --a, --um, præ'dæ. Incendē'
p. .] ^{just} ^{Army} ^{[See}
runt, --o, ‡ hor'rea, s. n., --um, plē'na, --us, --a,
^{much} ^{booty}
^{barn} ^{full}
--um, tritici, s. n., --um. Oblivis'citur, --or, ‡ in-
^{wheat} ^{(He) forgets} ⁱⁿ⁻
juriā'rum. Dux ‡ noster occi'dit, --o, ‡ Viridomā'
^{jury} ^{Viridomarus}
rum, s. n., --us, regem Gallō'rum. Sat'agit, --o,
^{Gaul} ^{He is occupied}
rerum suarum. Fugāvis'tis fortis'simos, pos., fortis,
^{brave}
hos'tium, s. n., --is. ‡ Mēmen'to mei. Deleg'imus,
--o, ‡ hom'inem inīmī'cum, --us, --a, --um, impē'
^{unfriendly}
rīo, s. n., --um, Rōmānō'rum. Rēmīnis'cīmur --or ‡
^{empire}
beneficiō'rum s. n., --um, tuorum. Vir doc'tus,
^{kindness} ^{learned}
--a, --um, quem vidē'bas, --eo, ‡ legē'bat Quinctil-
^{Quinctilian}
iā'num, s. n., --us, Recordam'ini, imperat., pāren'
^{parent} ^{wife}
tum, s. n., --ns, uxō'rum, s. n., uxor, liberō'rum,
--i. ‡ Oblivis'cīmur delic'ta, s. n., --um, nos'tra.
^{fault}

RULE VI. Verbs of the following classes usual-
ly govern a dative:

1st. Verbs which, when rendered into English,
are followed by *to* or *for*; as, *An'imus rē'dit, --eo,*
[See p. 157,] *hostibus.* Courage returns to the en-
emy.

2d. Verbs which signify to *profit*, to *hurt*, to *command*, to *obey*, to *be angry*, to *threaten*; as, *Ad'juvat mihi*. 1. He assists me.

3d. *Impersonal* verbs; as, *Lī'cet tibi*. It is lawful for you, or you are allowed.

4th. *Sum* and its compounds; as, *Est mihi lī'ber*. There is to me a book; that is, I have a book. *Præf'uit*, (*præsum*,) *exercit'ui*. He was before, that is, led, or commanded, the army.

Note 1st. *Sum* may govern two datives: one of a person, the other of a thing; as, *Est mihi voluptā'ti*. It is a pleasure to me.

2d. The word *Esse*, when preceded by a dative dependent on Rule VI. on the syntax of verbs, may have a corresponding dative after it; as, *Licē'bat* 2. (*imperson.*) *mihi esse neg-ligen'ti*, (*negligens.*) It was allowed me to be negligent.

Exceptions. The following impersonal verbs deviate from this rule:

1st. *Refert*, (it relates to,) and *Interest*, (it concerns,) commonly govern a genitive; as, *Refert patris*, it relates to (my) father: but require *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*; as, *Refert mea*. It relates to my (affairs,) or I am concerned.

2d. *Mis'eret*, (pity,) *Pæn'itet*, (repent,) *Pū'det*, (feel ashamed,) *Tædet*, (grow weary,) *Pi'get*, (grieve,) govern the accusative of a person and the genitive of a thing; as, *Mis-eret me tui*. I pity you.

3d. *Decet*, (it becomes,) *Delectat*, (it delights,) *Juvat*, (it aids or gratifies,) *Oportet*, (it behoves,) govern the accusative of a person, along with an infinitive mood; as, *Delec-tat me studere*. 2. It delights me to study; or, I delight to study.

4th. When *Sum* signifies possession, property, or duty, it governs a genitive; as, *Mil'itum* (*mīlest*) *est suo dū'ci* (*dux*) *parē're*. 2. It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

Recapitulation. What are the classes of verbs which govern a dative case? Mention examples to each class. How will you parse a dative depending on a verb followed by *to* or *for*? Give an example. Parse this example. How will

you parse a dative dependent on a verb signifying to profit, hurt, &c.? Mention an example. Parse this example. How will you parse a dative dependent on an impersonal verb? Mention an example: Parse this example. How will you parse a dative dependent on *sum* or one of its compounds? Give examples. Parse these examples. How will you parse two datives depending on *sum*? Give an example. Parse this example. How will you parse a dative following *esse*, when a dative precedes it? Mention and parse an example. Mention the impersonal verbs which deviate from the rule,—the case or cases, &c., which they govern,—examples which illustrate their syntax. How will you parse a genitive or the words *mea*, *tua*, &c., depending on *refert* or *interest*? Mention and parse examples. How will you parse an accusative and a genitive, dependent on *miseret*, *pœnitet*, &c.? Mention and parse an example. How will you parse an accusative case, and an infinitive mood, depending on *deceat*, *delectat*, &c.? Mention and parse an example. How will you parse a genitive case dependent on *sum*? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Tib'i sē'ris, --o : ‡ tibi mē'tis, --o. ‡
 Ad'fuit prec'ibus, --is. ‡ Lī'bri, s. n., --er, dē'sunt
 [See p 152.] books [See p. 152.]
 mihi. Erant mihi ar'bōres, arbores or --or, ‡ ōnus'tæ,
 --us, --a, --um, pō'mis, s. n., --um. Benedix'it,
 laden apple (He)
 benedico, ‡ nobis. Indulgē'tis, --eo, ‡ ei. Maled'-
 him
 icunt, --o, ‡ vobis. Præ'erat ag'mīni, s. n., agmen,
 [See p. 152.] band
 dig'no, --us, --a, --um, dū'ce, dux, ‡ suo. Conces-
 worthy
 sē'runt, concedo, ‡ illi. Res erat dōlō'ri, s. n., dolor,
 grief
 nobis. Invid'ia, --æ, nō'cet unicū'que. In'terest
 Envy [See p. 79.]
 om'nium, --is, --is, --e. Fī'nis, --is, venit, --io, ‡
 of all (men) An end

impē'riō, *s. n.*, --um, rēipub'licæ, *res publicus*, --a,
 empire republic

--um, pōtentiō'ri, *pos.*, potens, max'imis, *pos.*, mag-
 powerful

nus, † reg'ibus, *rex*. † Rē'fert vestra. Spēs, --ei,
 Hope

ū'na, --us, --a, --um, † sū'p̄erest nos'tris mīlit'ibus,
 [See p. 152.]

s. n., miles. † Pœn'itet me peccā'ti, *s. n.*, --um.
 sin

Vir † cui benēfā'ciunt, --o. † Dē'cet te auscultā'-
 listen

re. 1. Est filii *s. n.* --us † revereri 2. *dep.* parentes,
 reverence

s. n., parens. Cuinam nostrum minā'tus est? (*de-*
 parent [See p. 79.] threaten

pon.) Suf'fīcīt --io † illis. Urbs, --is, cui appropin'-
 It suffices The city approach

quas, 1. est Carthā'go. Jus'sit, jubeo, † mīlit'ibus
 Carthage

profiscis'ci, --or. † Tæ'det eum vī'tæ, *s. n.*, --a.
 life

Dixē'runt, dico, † me obes'se consil'īs. *s. n.*, --um,
 [See p. 152.] counsel

sū'is. Crēdid'imus, credō, † Romanos esse domi-
 nos orbis, orbis, † quibus dii, deus, † favebant, --eo. †
 world

Insipien'tis, *s. n.*, insipiens, --us, --ns, est dicere, --o, †
 of a foolish (man)

sapientia, --æ, est mihi soli, *s. n.*, --us, --a, --um. †
 wisdom alone

Homo quem dixis'ti succēs'sit, succedo, † huic.
 to this (man)

Nātū'ra, --æ, dedit dō † om'nibus esse beā'tis, --us,
 Nature

--a, --um.
 happy.

RULE VII. Verbs of the following classes govern an ablative:

1st. Verbs which signify plenty, and verbs which signify want; as, *Abun'dat* 1. *divit'is*, --æ. ‡ He abounds in riches. *Cā'ret* 2. *cul'pā*. He is free from fault.

2d. *Ū'tor*, (use,) *Abū'tor*, (abuse,) *Frū'or*, (enjoy,) *Fun'gor*, (discharge,) *Pō'tior*, (possess,) and *Ves'cor*, (feed on;) as, *U'titur*, --or, ‡ *fraude*, *fraus*. He uses deceit.

Recapitulation. What verbs govern an ablative? Give examples. How do you parse an ablative case depending on verbs of plenty and want? Mention examples. Parse these examples. How do you parse an ablative depending on *utor*, &c.? Mention an example. Parse the example.

Exercises. *Ē'get*, --eo, ‡ *consil'io*, *s. n.*, --um.
counsel

At'fluit, --o, ‡ *op'ibus*, *opis*. ‡ *Abū'titur*, --or, ‡ *lī'bris*, --er. *Fruuntor*, --or, ‡ *au'rā cœ'li*, --um.
book air

Func'tus es, *fun'gor*, *offic'io*, *s. n.*, --um, *tuo*. *Pō'ti'ti sunt*, *potior*, *Sicā'niā pā'triā Cýclō'pum*, *Cy-*
duty
Sicily native country

clops, masc. *Ves'citur*, --or, ‡ *fō'lis*, --um, *pat'*
It feeds on leaf

ulæ, --us, --a, --um, *ar'bōris*, *arbo*, or *arbor*, ‡
spreading

Jō'vis, *s. n.*, *Jupiter*. ‡ *Tellus* ‡ *exū'bērat* 1. *flor'*
teem

ibus, *flos*, *dō'nis*, *s. n.*, --um, *vē'ris*, *ver*. ‡ *Vā'cat* 1.
flower gift He is free

mendā'cio, *s. n.*, --um, *pes'sīmo*, *pos.*, *mā'lus*, ‡ *vi-*
falsehood

tĩō'rum, *s. n.*, --um. Homo fal'sus, --a, --um, an'ĩmi,
vice false
s. n., --us, u'tĩtur mǎ'lis, --us, --a, --um, ‡ ar'tĩbus, *ars.*
mind art
Frũ'ĩtur vĩ'tǎ cǎ'rǎ, *s. n.*, --us, --a, --um, sibi. Func-
dear
ta est mũ'nere, *s. n.*, *munus*, digno, --us, --a, --um,
office worthy
fem'ĩnǎ ortǎ, --us, --a, --um, reg'ĩbus, *s. n.*, *rex.* ‡
sprung
Potĩ'ti sunt urbe, *urbs*, rē-fer'tǎ, --us, --a, --um,
city crowded
op'ĩbus, *opis.* ‡ Vescēban'tur fruc'tibus dulcior'ĩ-
bus, *pos.*, *dulcis*, --is, --e, melle, *s. n.*, *mel.*
sweet honey.

RULE VIII. The following verbs govern an accusative and a genitive :

1st. Verbs which signify to *accuse*, to *condemn*, to *acquit*, to *admonish*, govern the accusative case of the person or thing accused, &c., and the genitive of the crime, or the subject of the admonition ; as, *Accūsant* 1. *illum furti*, (*s. n.*, --*um*.) They accuse him of theft.

2d. Verbs of valuing govern the accusative of the object which is valued, and the genitive of the value; as, *Æs'timo* 1. *te magni*, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*. † I value you much.

Recapitulation. What classes of verbs govern an accusative and a genitive? Mention examples. How will you parse an accusative and a genitive depending on a verb signifying to accuse, or on a verb signifying to value. Mention and parse examples.

Exercises. Meip'sum īner'tiæ, *s. n.*, --*a*, con-

[See p. 77. N. 3.]

idleness con-

dem'no. 1. Illum hōmīcid'ī, *s. n.*, --*um*, absol'vunt,
demn murder

--*o*. ‡ Mō'net 2. me offic'ī, *s. n.*, --*um*, mei. Hā'-
He advises duty

bent vos nī'hīlī, *s. n.*, --*um*. Ille qui sē'det, --*eo*, ‡
hold nought

prox'imus, *propior*, ‡ tibi insim'ulat 1. te mendā-
accuse

cī, --*um*. Damnant 1. unumquem'que vestrum ig-
falsehood Condemn [See p. 79. R. IV.]

nā'viæ, *s. n.*, --*a*. Commōnēfāciē'bā'tis, --*o*, ‡ eum
sloth

peric'ulī, *s. n.*, --*um*, qui nolē'bat audī're. Pen'dī-
danger re-

mus, --*o*, ‡ vos min'īmī, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*, pos., par-
gard

vus, ‡ qui dic'itis, --*o*, ‡ vos esse sāpientis'sīmos,
pos., sapiens, om'nīum.

Accusā'vit 1. te negligē'-
wise accuse

tiæ, *s. n.*, --*a*, qui amīsis'ti, amitto, ‡ tuum lī'brum,
negligence

liber. Dixē'runt, dico, ‡ vos dam'nāvis'se illum cæ'-
book

dis, *s. n.*, --*es*. Sunt mihi lit'eræ, *s. n.*, --*a*, quæ
murder a letter

absol'vunt, --*o*, ‡ te pō'nā. Ser'vit 4. vobis qui
punishment serve

æstīmā'tis 1. eum par'vi, --*us*, --*a* --*um*. ‡ Audi-
vi

eos egē're, --*eo*, ‡ multis, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*.
many (things.)

RULE IX. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring,
taking away, and all verbs of similar signification,

govern an accusative of the object compared, &c., and a dative of the person to whom, or the thing to which, the object is compared, &c.; as, *Com'pāro* 1. *Virgil'ium* *Hómē'ro*, (*s. n.*, --*us*.) I compare Virgil to Homer.

Recapitulation. What cases do verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern? Mention an example. How do you parse an accusative and a dative, depending on verbs of comparing, &c.? Give an example. Parse this example.

Exercises. *Sū'um* *cuī'que* *tribū'ito*, --*o*. ‡ *Nar-*
tell
ras 1. *fab'ulam* *surdo*, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*. *Erip'uit*,
story deaf
--*io*, ‡ *me* *morti*, *mors*. *Misis'ti*, *mitto*, ‡ *mihi* *epis-*
death let-
tolam. *Pā'ter*, --*ris*, *ejus* *dē'dit*, *do*, ‡ *lī'brum*, *liber*,
ter father book
meo *frā'tri*, *frater*. *Monstrā'vit* 1. *nobis* *hominem*
brother pointed out
qui *insimulā'vit* 1. *te* *proditio'nis*, *proditio*. *Abs-*
accuse treason
tulit, *aufero*, *mihi* *chartam* *quam* *tu* *dēdis'ti* *mihi*.
[See p. 164.] paper
Hóstes, *s. n.*, --*is*, ‡ *dē'dunt*, --*o*, ‡ *se* *nostro* *duci*,
dux, ‡ *mitissimo*, *pos.*, *mitis*, *hominum*. *Expē'dī-*
I will
am 4, *tibi* *omnia*, --*is*, --*is*, --*e*, *quæ* *audivi* *eos* *dic-*
state
ere, --*o*. ‡

RULE X. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives;—one of the person of whom a thing is asked, or to whom a thing is taught: the other of the thing which is asked or taught; as,

verb, of which the active voice governs two cases? Mention and parse an example. What cases would the active voice of *comparatur* govern? By what rule?

Exercises. Doceor, --eo, ‡ grammat'icam. Ac-
grammar
 cu'sor 1. furti, s. n., --um. Dedoceb'itur, --eor, ‡
theft (He) shall, &c.
 mendā'cium, s. n., --um, vit'ium, s. n., --um, servō'-
falsehood vice
 rum, s. n., --us. Fab'ula, --æ, narrā'tur 1. hom'ini
slave story tell
 qui est surdus, --a, --um. Liberā'tus est mē'tu,
deaf free
 s. n., --us, hom'inis appēten'tis, s. n., appetens, ul-
fear greedy
 tiō'nis, s. n., ultio. Prod'igi, --us, --a, --um, pro-
revenge profuse
 missō'rum, s. n., --um, æstīman'tur 1. min'imi, pos.,
promise esteem
 parvus. ‡ Quid solā'tii, s. n., --um, posset esse
comfort
 homini qui damnā'tus erat cap'itis? Docem'ini,
condemn of (his) head, i. e. to death.
 --eo, ‡ car'mīna, s. n., carmen, Ovid'ii, s. n., --us, el-
verse Ovid
 égantis'simi, pos., elegans, --tis, poetā'rum, s. n.,
elegant
 --a. ‡ Diādē'ma, --tis, oblā'tum est Cæs'ari, s. n.,
crown [See p. 164.]
 Cæsar, dū'ci, s. n., dux, infes'to, --us, --a, --um,
Cesar leader hostile
 réipub'līcæ, res publicus, --a, --um.
republic.

RULE XII. Participles agree in gender, number, and case, with substantives, substantive pro-

nouns, and words used substantively ; as, *Fā'ma* 1. *crēden'da*, --o, ‡ a report to be credited.

Recapitulation. With what parts of speech do participles agree ? In what respects do they agree with those words ? Give an example. How will you parse a participle ? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. *Mā'ter* ‡ *amata*. *Manus* ‡ *hab'ītæ*
esteem
vac'ūæ, --us, --a, --um, *cā'dis*, s. n., --es. ‡ *Vī'ta*,
slaughter A life
--æ, *parcen'da*, *parco*. ‡ *Frā'ter*, --ris, *hū'jus fem'*-
The brother
inæ moritū'ræ, *morior*. ‡ *Tē'la*, s. n., --um, *mil'ī-*
weapon
tum, *miles*, ‡ *qui pugnā'ti sunt*. *Nulli*, --us, --a,
fight
--um, ‡ *hos'tium*, --is, ‡ *armā'ti* 1. *erant*. *Dix'ī-*
arm
mus, *dico*, ‡ *eos petītū'ros*, --o, ‡ *esse pā'cem*, *pax*.
peace.

Dixerunt pacem esse petendam.

Note. When a participle and the word with which it agrees, whether expressed or understood, are detached from the other words in a sentence, they form what is called the *ablative absolute* : that is, detached, or independent ; thus, *Sole*, (s. n., sol, ‡) *oriente*, (orior, ‡) *fugiunt* (--io, ‡) *tenebræ*. ‡ The sun rising, darkness flees.

Recapitulation. When a participle, and the word with which it agrees, are detached from the other words in a sentence, how are they denominated ? Give an example. How will you parse a participle and the word with which it agrees, when they are detached from the other words in a sentence ? Mention and parse an example. \

Exercises. Op'ère, *s. n.*, *opus*, perac'to, *perago*, †
 ludē'mus, --o, † Pŷthag'óras, † Súper'bo, *s. n.*, --us,
 regnan'te, 1. venit, --io, † Ítal'íam. Nostro equitā'-
 tu, *s. n.*, --us, adventan'te 1. hostes ostendē'runt,
 --o, † pedestres, --is, --is, --e, cō'pías, *pl. n.*, --æ,
 arum. Lævī'nus, --i, dux † Rómā'ni, --us, --a,
 --um, exer'citus, *s. n.*, --us, omni, --is, --is, --e. Si-
 cil'íā recep'tā, recipio, † Macédon'ibus, *Macedo*,
 fractis, *frango*, † régres'sus est, *regredior*. † Ti-
 bē'rio, *s. n.*, --us, Imperātō're, *s. n.*, *Imperator*.—
 [Supply in this, and the following instances, the
 ablative case of existens, --tis, (being.)] Te'duce,
s. n., dux. † Cāio, *s. n.*, --us, Jū'lío, *s. n.*, --us,
 Cæs'āre, *s. n.*, *Cæsar*, Pontif'íce, *s. n.*, *pontifex*, †
 Max'ímo, pos., *magnus*. † His consū'líbus, *consul*. †

RULE XIII. Participles, gerunds, and supines, govern the same cases as the other parts of a verb; thus, *Amans virtū'tem*, (*s. n.*, *virtus*, †) loving virtue.

Recapitulation. What cases do participles, gerunds, and supines, govern? Give an example. How do you parse a case depending on a participle, a gerund, or a supine? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Vī'di, --eo, ‡ eam lēgen'tem epis'tolam.
letter

Audiendo, gerund, illum loquentem, loquor, ‡ hæc
verba, s. n., --um. Speculā'tum, supine, speculor, 1.
word

hostes advēnien'tes, advenio. ‡ Profec'tus est, pro-
fisciscor, ‡ auditurus respon'sum, s. n., --um, regis,
answer

rex, cui missus erat, mitto, ‡ lēgā'tus, --i. Mīnā'-
king ambassador

tus, minor, 1. homini omnis crim'inis, s. n.: crimen,
threaten accusation

absolū'to, absolvo. ‡ Præben'tes, præbeo, 2. fru-
afford

men'tum, s. n., --um, hos'tibus. Rē'gio, --nis, flū'-
corn region

ens, fluo, ‡ lac'te, s. n., lac, cā'rens, careo, ‡ fru'gī-
milk

bus, frugis. ‡ Functus, fungor, ‡ offic'io, s. n., --um,
duty

ab'it lætus, --a, --um. Mōnen'tes, moneo, 2. me
[See p. 152.] joyful admonish

errō'ris, s. n., error, dixē'runt, dico, ‡ me esse in-
fault

er'tem, iners. Ev'itans 1. tē'lum, s. n., --um, mis-
indolent shun weapon

sum ei. Illa habebatur docta, --us, --a, --um, do-
was held, or esteemed learned

ceo, ‡ ingen'uas, s. n., --us, --a, --um, artes, s. n.,
ars.

Note. The participle in *du*s always governs a da-
tive; as, Vir ‡ venerandus, (-a, -um, 1. *repon.*) tibi,
a man to be venerated by you.

Exercises. Vox ‡ audienda omnibus, --is, --is,
--e. Mater, --ris, amanda suis lib'érīs, pl. n., --i. ‡
A mother children

Lex ‡ servan'da 1. civ'ibus, --is. ‡ Monstrā'vit 1.
 observe show

mihi vī'am lē'thī, s. n., --um, calcan'dam 1. vobis.
 path death tread

Vit'ium, --i, evitan'dum 1. adolescen'tibus, adoles-
 A vice shun

cens, ‡ qui cū'piunt, --o, ‡ fi'eri ū'tiles, --is, --is, --e,
 useful

pā'triæ, s. n., --a.
 country.

RULE XIV. Gerunds are commonly regulated by the same rules as substantives; as, *Legendum est mihi*. Reading is to me, i. e. I must read. *Tempus (--oris) legendi*, time of reading.

Recapitulation. By what rules are gerunds commonly regulated? Give examples. By what rule on verbs would you parse *est*, in the first example? By what rule on substantives would you parse *legendi*, in the second example? How will you parse a gerund? Mention and parse examples.

Exercises. Mōrien'dum, *morior*, ‡ est omnibus.
 Cū'pidus, --a, --um, discen'di, *disco*. ‡ Charta, --æ,
 Desirous Paper
 utilis scriben'do, *scribo*. ‡ Scio 4. legen'dum esse
 know
 mihi. Mēmō'rīa, --æ, augē'tur, --eo, ‡ excōlen'do,
 memory
excolo. ‡ Expectan'dum 1. est nobis. Facul'tas,
 wait opportunity
 --atis, pugnan'di 1. datur, do, ‡ milit'ibus, *miles*, ‡
 fight
 eae légiō'nis, *legio*. ‡ Vidē'mus, --eo, ‡ pugnan'dum
 esse hostibus. Dēfes'sus sum, *defitiscor*, ‡ audien-

do horum inep'tias, --æ, † --arum. ^{nonsense} Idō'neus, --a, ^{fit}
 --um, erat. regen'do, *rego*, † an'imos com'itum, s.
 n., comes. †

RULE XV. The supine in *um* depends on a verb signifying motion; as, *Abiit* [see p. 157] *deambulantum*, 1. He is gone to walk.

Recapitulation. On what class of words does the supine in *um* depend? Give an example. How do you parse the supine in *um*? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Jus'sus est, *jubeo*, † dū'cere, *duco*, †
 cohōr'tes, s. n., *cohors*, prædā'tum 1. castra, ^{cohort} ^{plunder}
 --tra, † hos'tium opūlen'ta, --us, --a, --um, au'ri, s.
 n., --um. ^{rich} Venē bat, --io, † irrī'sum, *irrideo*, † infor-
 gōld
 tū'nīa, s. n., --um, tua. Te id admon'itum 2. ivit.
 misfortune admonish
 Mīsē'runt, *mitto*, † nos percontā'tum, *percontor*.
 inquire
Appropin'quant 1. oppugnā'tum 1. urbem munītis'-
 approach assault
 sīmam, *pos.* *munitus*, omnium.
 fortified

RULE XVI. The supine in *u*, depends on adjectives; as, *Facilis dictu*, easy to be told.

Recapitulation. On what class of words does the supine in *u* depend? Give an example. How will you parse the supine in *u*? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Quod est fœ'dum, --us, --a, --um,
 disgraceful

factu, *facio*, ‡ est *foedum dictu*, *dico*. ‡ *Difficilis*,
 difficult
 --is, --e, est *inven'tu*, *invenio*, ‡ *ve'rus*, --a, --um, a-
 true
mi'cus, --i. *Mons'trum*, --i, *fatā'le*, --is, --is, --e,
 friend prodigy fatal
op'pido, *s. n.*, --um, *horren'dum*, --us, --a, --um, *vi'*-
 town dreadful
su, *video*. ‡ *Mi'sit*, *mitto*, *vobis epis'tolam dignam*,
 letter
 --us, --a, --um, *recitā'tu*. 1. *Can'tus* --us *istarum*
 worthy read singing
av'ium, *s. n.*, *avis*, ‡ est *jucun'dus*, --a, --um, au-
 pleasant
 ditu.

SYNTAX OF CIRCUMSTANCES,

dependent on verbs, and sometimes on adjectives,
 &c.

Explan. By *circumstance* is meant that which is not in-
 herent in an object, or necessarily connected with it, but is
 merely accidental; as, *price, manner, cause, &c.*

I. PRICE.

RULE. The price of a thing depends on verbs
 and adjectives, and is found in the ablative case;
 as, *E'mi* (--o ‡) *li'brum*, (*liber*,) *duō'bus*, (*duo*, ‡) *as'-*
sibus, (*as*. ‡) I bought a book for two shillings.

Exception. These genitives, *Tanti*, *Quanti*, *Plū'ris*, *Mi-*
nō'ris, are excepted; as, *Quanti*, (--us, --a, --um,) *con'stitit*,
 (*consto*. ‡) How much did it cost?

Recapitulation. In what case do you find the price of a
 thing? Give an example. What words are excepted from
 this rule? How will you parse a word signifying price?
 Mention and parse examples. [The answer to the latter

question must embrace the distinction between the rule and its exception.]

Exercises. Hoc glā'dium, --i, cons tītīt tālen'to,
sword

s. n., --um. Homo venā'lis, --is, --is, --e, au'ro, s.
talent venal, i. e. to be bought

n., --um. Nōlē'bat em'ere spem, s. n., spes, tanti,
gold hope so

--us, --a, --um. Nō'cet 2. vōlup'tas, --atis, emp'ta
much hurt pleasure

dōlō're, s. n., dolor. Hōnō'res, s. n., honos, plū'rī-
pain honor

mi, pos., multus, ‡ vē'neunt, --eo, ‡ auro. Pal'līum,
cloak

--i, cā'rum, --us, --a, --um, tālen'to, ven'ditur, --o, ‡
dear

plū'ris.

II. CAUSE, MEANS, MANNER.

RULE. Substantives which express the circumstances of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, depend on verbs and adjectives, and are found in the ablative case; as, *Scrībo cal'āmo*, (s. n., --us.) I write with a reed.

Recapitulation. In what case are the circumstances of cause, means, and manner, expressed? Give an example. How will you parse a word expressing cause, means, or manner? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Pal'lēo ‡ mē'tu, s. n., --us. Fē'cit fa-
fear

cio ‡ suo mō're, s. n., mos. Affec'tus, --a, --um,
manner Affected

grā'vi, --is, --is, --e, morbo, s. n., --us, per'ūt. Æ-
distressing disease [See p. 157.] E-

nē'as dux ‡ insig'nīs, --īs, --e, piētā'te, s. n., pietas.
neas remarkable piety

Pē'de, s. n., *pes*, † tac'īto, -us, -a, -um, vē'nit, --io, †
foot silent

sénec'tus. ‡ Transfix'it, *transfigo*, ‡ adolescen'tem,
s. n., adoles'cens, *hasta*. Hi certant 1. defen'dere,
youth spear strive

--o, ‡ se jac'ulis, *s. n.*, --um : illi, saxis, *s. n.*, --um.
dart stone

Tū'midus, --*a*, --*um*, irā mīnā'tus est 1. ei. Trans-
Swelling anger threaten

fos'sus, transfō'dio, multis, --us, --a, --um, vulner'-
many

ībus, *s. n.*, *vulnus*, cā'dit, --o, ‡ prō'nus, --a, --um.
wound prostrate.

III. PLACE.

RULE I. Substantives which express the names of towns or cities, and which may be used in answer to the question *Where?* are found in the *genitive* case; as, *Vixit, (vivo, ‡) Romæ.* He lived in Rome.

Except substantives of the third declension, and substantives of the plural number, which are found in the *ablative*; as, *Hab'itat* 1. *Carthag'ine*. He dwells in Carthage. *Stū'du-it Athē'nis*, (*--æ, --arum.*) He studied at Athens.

RULE II. When the name of a town or of a city answers the question *Whither?* it is found in the *accusative* case; as, *Profec'tus est, (profisciscor, †) Rō'mam.* He set out for Rome.

RULE III. Substantives which answer the question *Whence?* or the question *Through what place?* are found in the *ablative* case; as, *Disces-sit*, (*discedo*), *Corin'tho*, (*s. n., --us.*†) He depart-

ed from Corinth. *Lăodice'ă i'ter*, (gen., *itin'eris*), *făctē'bat* (--o. ‡) He made his journey through Laodicea.

Note. The words *Dō'mus*, ‡ (home,) and *Rus*, ‡ (the country,) are subject to all the rules on Place; thus, *Mă'net*, (--eo, ‡) *dō'mi*, (*s. n.*, --us.) He stays at home: and the words *Hū'mi*, (*s. n.*, --us,) (on the ground,) *Milit'ia*, (in war or abroad,) and *Belli*, (in war or abroad,) are governed by the first rule; as, *Jă'cet 2 humi*. He lyes on the ground.

Recapitulation. In what case are substantives found, which answer the question *where*? Give an example. What exception is there to this rule? Give an example. How do you parse a substantive which answers the question *where*? Mention and parse examples to the rule, and the exception.

[The other rules on place to be recapitulated in the same way.]

Exercises. Ait se esse hăbitătū'rum. 1. Lug-

[See p. 168.] dwell

dūr'ni, *s. n.*, --um. *Han'nibal*, --is, *vī'cit*, *vinco*, ‡

Lyons Hannibal

Romanos, *Cannis*, *pl. n.*, --æ. *Promīsis'ti*, *promit-*

Cannæ

to, ‡ *te vectū'rum esse*, *veho*, ‡ *ămī'cum*, *s. n.*, --us,

mē'um Athē'nas. *Lăcedăemon*, --is, *distat*. 1. A-

Athens

Lacedemon

is distant

thē'nis i'ter, *s. n.*, *iter*, ‡ *quat'vor diē'rum*, *s. n.*, *di-*

es. ‡ *Prod'erit tibi mănē're domi*. *Fră'ter*, --ris,

[See p. 152.]

brother

mēus vī'vit, -o, ‡ *rū're*. *Rēplē'tus*, --a, --um, *vī'-*

Surcharged

no, *s. n.*, --um, *jă'cet 2 supī'nus*, --a, --um, *humi*.

wine

lye

supine

Mīnā'ti sunt, 1. *depon.*, *mihi redēun'ti*, *redeo*, do-

threaten

[See p. 157.]

mum. *Sunt illis ămī'ci poten'tes*, *potens*, *Býzan'-*

powerful

tū, *s. n.*, --um. Vir amandus, --a, --um, domi, tū
Byzantium

mendus, --a, --um, 2. belli. Red tū rure, onus'tus,
fear

--a, --um, fruc'tibus lābō'ris, *s. n.*, labor. Ab tū
laden labor. [See p. 157.]

Trojā potitū'rus, potiōr, 4. depon., Ital'ia. Ad tū
Troy possess Italy [See p. 157.]

Carthag'inem. Romæ insimulāvis'tis 1. eum insidi-
At Rome accuse

ā'rum, *pl. n.*, --æ : ‡ rure, iner'tiæ, *s. n.*, --a : milit'ia,
plots idleness

tīmō'ris, *s. n.*, timor. Illa docē'tur, --eo, ‡ mū'si-
fear music

cam domi.

IV. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

RULE. Substantives which express *measure* or *distance*, are found in the *accusative*, and sometimes in the *ablative*; as, Mū'rus (--i) est dē'cem, ‡ pē'-des, (*pes*, ‡) altus, (--a, --um.) The wall is two feet high. Urbs (--is) distat 1. itin'ere, (*iter*, ‡) unī'us, (*unus*, --a, --um, ‡) diē'i, (*s. n.*, dies. ‡) The city is distant one day's journey.

Recapitulation. In what case are words found, which express measure or distance? Give examples. How will you parse a substantive signifying measure or distance? Mention and parse examples.

Exercises. Mil'itis, *s. n.*, miles, ‡ nostri exer-
citus, *s. n.*, --us, fecē'runt, facio, ‡ fossam centum, ‡
trench
pē'des, *s. n.*, pes, ‡ longam, --us, --a, --um, tres,
long

--es, --es, --ia, ‡ pedes altam, --us, --a, --um, octo ‡
 pedes lā'tam, --us, --a, --um. Equitā'tus, --us, hos-
 tium, s. n., --is, ‡ abfuerunt trigin'ta ‡ mil'ia, mil-
 le, ‡ pas'suum, s. n., --us. Campus, --i, patē'bat 2.
 quin'decem ‡ milliā'rīa, s. n., --um. Castra ‡ Ro-
 mā'ni exer'citus, s. n., --us, pos'ita sunt, pono, ‡
 āper'tis, --us, --a, --um, lō'cis, s. n., us. ‡
 open

V. TIME.

RULE I. A substantive which answers the question *When?* is found in the *ablative*; as, Ve'nit, (--io, ‡) horā tertiā, (-us, --a, --um.) He came at the third hour.

II. A substantive which answers the question *How long?* is sometimes found in the *ablative*, but oftener in the *accusative*; as, Mansit, (maneo, ‡) pau'cos, (-us, --a, --um,) dies, (s. n., dies. ‡) He staid a few days.

Recapitulation. In what case is a substantive found, which answers the question *When?* Give an example. How will you parse a substantive which answers the question *When?* Mention and parse an example. In what cases may a substantive be found, which answers the question *How long?* Mention an example. How will you parse a substantive which answers the question *How long?* Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Vē'nit mihi nocte, s. n., nox. ‡ Dor-

mīvis'ti 4. tō'tam, --us, --a, --um, noctem. Eo die,
sleep

s. n., dies, ‡ ille erat dux ‡ hos'tiūm, --is. ‡ Pug-
nāvē'runt 1. summā, pos., superus, ‡ vi, s. n., vis, ‡
fought

quat'ūor ‡ hō'ras. Prī'mā, --us, --a, --um, lū'ce, s.
first

n., lux, vidē'runt, --eo, ‡ hostes red'ēuntes. Eā totā
[See p. 157.]

nocte conāban'tur, 1. depon., fū'gēre, --o. ‡
endeavor

CHAPTER IV.—ADVERBS.

Explan. The word *adverb* is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to a verb*, and is used as the name of the fourth class of Latin words, because words of this class are *added*, usually, *to verbs*.

DEFINITION. An adverb is an indeclinable word, added to adjectives and adverbs, but more commonly to verbs, to express a circumstance or quality of their signification; as, *BĒNE scri'bit*. He writes well.

Explan. As substantives express circumstances, and adjectives express qualities, adverbs may seem to the young learner, an unnecessary part of speech; and, indeed, they are not essential to language. There is, however, an important advantage attending the use of them: they enable us to express, in one word, what we must otherwise have been obliged to convey in several; thus, instead of saying, *Hoc loco*, in this place, we say briefly, *Hic*, here.

OBSERV. I. Adverbs may be divided into two principal classes: those which denote *circumstances*, and those which denote *qualities*.

II. Adverbs which denote **CIRCUMSTANCE**, are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*; as *Hic*, here; *Ib'i*, there; *Nunc*, now; *Tunc*, then; *Sēcun'do*, secondly; *Postrē'mo*, lastly.

III. Adverbs which denote **QUALITY**, are such as *Bē'ne*, well; *Mā'le*, ill; &c.

RULE I. Adverbs which are derived from adjectives, are commonly compared like those adjectives.

II. The positive degree of such adverbs ends commonly in *e* or *ter*; as *Dū're*, *fāc'ile*, *ac'rīter*:

the comparative in *ius* ; as *dū'rīus*, *fācil'ius*, *ac'rīus* : the superlative in *ime* ; as *duris'sīme*. *fācil'īme*, *ācer'rīme*.

Recapitulation.

What is the word *adverb* derived from ? How is it used ? Why ? What is an adverb ? Give an example. Are adverbs essential to language ? What is the advantage of using them ? Give an example. How may adverbs be divided ? Mention, with examples, the adverbs which denote circumstances. What are the adverbs which denote quality ? How do you compare adverbs which are derived from adjectives ? In what does the positive degree of such adjectives end ?—the comparative ?—the superlative ?

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE I. Adverbs are joined to adjectives and adverbs, but more commonly to verbs; as *BENE scribit.*

Recap. To what are adverbs joined? Give an example. How will you parse an adverb? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Nū'per vī'di, --eo, ‡ eum. Servus, --i,
lately slave
ēgrē'gīe fīdē'lis, --is, --e. Legerunt sā'tis be'ne.
remarkably faithful enough well
Vir ‡ for'titūr pugnans, --tis. 1. Campus, --i, lā'te
bravely fighting. The field widely
pātē'bat. 2. Libērā'vit 1. sō'cīos, s. n., --us, stren'-
extend extricate ally vigorous-
ue oppugnan'do 1. op'pīdum, s. n., --um. Ā'ger, --ri,
ly assault town
diligen'ter colēn'dus, colo. ‡ Hos'tībus, s. n. --is, ‡
diligently
cī'to fū'sis, fundo, ‡ nos'tri stā'tim rediē'runt.—
quickly [See page 157.]
Dux ‡ prot'inus ex'īit vī'sum, video, captī'vos, s.
immediately [See p. 157.]
n., --us. Prōdig'ium, --i, ad'modum mī'rum, --us,
captive A prodigy very won-
--a, --um, vī'su. Homo qui vī'vit, --o, ‡ mī'nus
derful less
sapīen'ter servo suo. Ter'tiā, --us, --a, --um, vī-
wisely third
gil'iā hostes imprōvī'so irrūpē'runt, irrumpō, ‡ cas-
watch suddenly
tris, pl, n., castra. ‡ Postrid'ie locū'tus est loquor ‡
camp On the following day
dū'as, duo, --æ, --o, hō'ras. Semper hābitā'bat. 1.
hour always

Rō'mæ. Extem'plo vē'nit, -io, ‡ Thē'bas, *pl. n.*, -æ.
immediately Thebes

Dein'de ab'it Babylō'ne. **Equitā'tus**, *s. n.*, -us,

Then [See p. 157.] Babylon cavalry
 sēcū'ti, sequor, † nī'mis audac'ter capti sunt, ca-
 too boldly

pio. i

RULE II. Adverbs derived from adjectives govern the same cases as the adjectives from which they are derived; thus, *Om'nium*, --is, --is, --e, *optime*, (derived from the superlative adjective *optimus*,) *loquūtur*, --or. ‡ He speaks the best of all.

Recapitulation. What cases do adverbs govern, which are derived from adjectives? Give an example. How do you parse a word depending on an adverb which is derived from an adjective? Mention and parse an example. From what adjective is the adverb *optime* derived? In what degree of comparison is the adjective *optimus*? What case ought *optimus* to govern? By what rule?

Exercises. Vī've, --o, ‡ convēnien'ter nātū'rē.
agreeably nature

Colum'ba, --æ, avolā'vit 1. ō'cŷus vento, *s. n.*, --us.

The dove fly away more swiftly wind
Ēgē'runt, ago, ‡ pes'sime omnium. Vī'vit inūtil'-
worst unprofit-

• **īter** **pā'trīæ.**
ably **country.**

RULE III. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity govern a genitive ; as, *Ubique genitium*, (s. n., gens.) Everywhere of nations : that is, Everywhere in the world ; or, briefly, Everywhere.

Recapitulation. What case do some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern? Give an example. How do you parse a substantive dependent on an adverb of time, place, or quantity? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Tunc tem'pōris : s. n., *tempus*.

time : i. e. At that time.

Ibī'dem lō'cī : s. n., --us.

Au-

In the same

place : i. e. In the same place.

div'Imus nī'mis fabulā'rum.

Huic

too much fables : i. e. too many fables.

hom'īni est sā'tis elōquen'tiæ sapien'tiæ pā'rum.

enough

little.

CHAPTER V.—PREPOSITIONS.

Explan. The word *preposition* is derived from a Latin word which signifies *placed before*, and is used as the name of the fifth class of Latin words ; because words of this class are commonly *placed before* the words which they govern.

DEFINITION. A preposition is an indeclinable part of speech, used to express a relation between two words ; thus, *Venit --io ad templum, s. n., --um.* He came to the temple.

OBSERV. I. Prepositions are divided into three classes, dependent on the case which they govern.

II. The following prepositions govern an accusative.

Ad,	To ;	Infra,	Beneath ;
Ā'pud,	At, With ;	Juxta,	Nigh to ;
An'te,	Before ;	Ob,	For ;
Adver'sus,	} Against ;	Propter,	For, Near ;
Adver'sum,		Per,	By, Through ;
Con'tra,	Against ;	Præ'ter,	} Besides, Except ;
Cis,	} On this side ;	Pē'nes,	
Cī'tra,		Post,	In the power of ;
Circa,	} About ;	Pō'ne,	After ;
Circum,		Sē'cus,	Behind ;
Erga,	Towards ;	Sēcun'dum,	By, Along ;
Extra,	Without ;	Trans,	According to ;
Inter,	} Between, Among ;		On the far-
Intra,			ther side ;
Supra,	Within ;	Ultra,	Beyond ;
	Above ;	Versus,	Towards.

III. The following prepositions govern an ablative.

A, Ab, Abs, <i>From, By</i> ;	De, <i>Of, Concerning</i> ;
Absque, <i>Without</i> ;	E, Ex, <i>Of, Out of</i> ;
Cum, <i>With</i> ;	Pro, <i>For</i> ;
Clam, <i>Without the know-</i>	Præ, <i>Before</i> ;
ledge of ;	Pā'lam, <i>With the know-</i>
Cō'ram, <i>Before, In the</i>	ledge of ;
presence of ;	Tē'nus, <i>Up to, As far as.</i>
Si'ne, <i>Without</i> ;	

IV. These four govern sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative.

In, <i>Into, In</i> ;	Sub, <i>Under</i> ;
Super, <i>Above</i> ;	Subter, <i>Beneath.</i>

Note 1st. The preposition *In* is rendered by *into*, when it governs an accusative, and by *in*, when it governs an ablative.

2d. *Tenus* and *versus* are usually placed *after* the words which they govern ; as, *Romam versus.* Towards Rome.

3d. The preposition *Cum* not only follows, sometimes, the word which it governs, but is joined to it so as to form apparently but one word with it ; thus, *Mecum tecum quibuscum.*

Recapitulation.

What is the word preposition derived from ? How is it used ? Why ? What is a preposition ? Give an example. Into how many classes are prepositions divided ? Recite the prepositions which govern an accusative. Recite the prepositions which govern an ablative. What case does *ante* govern ?—*ob* ?—*absque* ?—*de* ?—[&c., throughout, so as to exhaust both classes.] Mention the four prepositions which govern sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative ? How do you render *in*, when it governs an accusative ?—when an ablative ?

What is remarked of *tenus* and *versus* ? Give an example. In what situation is *cum* sometimes found ? Mention examples.

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE I. The prepositions *Ad, apud, ante, &c.*, govern an accusative; as, *Ad fō'rum*, to the forum.

RULE II. The prepositions *A, ab, abs, &c.*, govern an ablative; as, *A fō'rō*, from the forum.

Exception. *Tenus* governs sometimes a plural genitive; as, *Gen'um tenus*, up to the knees.

RULE III. The prepositions *In, Sub, Super, and Subter*, govern an ablative, when they are preceded by a word signifying motion or direction *towards* an object. When they are not preceded by such a word, *In* and *Sub* govern an ablative, *Super* and *Subter* either an accusative or an ablative; as, *Ire IN urbem, s. n., urbs*. To go into the city. *Venī're, --io, † In tem'pore, s. n., tempus*, to come in season.

RULE IV. A preposition, forming part of a compound word, governs sometimes the same case as when used separately; thus, *Adeunt scholam*. They go to school.

Recapitulation. What case do the prepositions *Ad, apud, &c.*, govern? Give an example. How do you parse a substantive or a pronoun depending on one of the first class of prepositions? Mention and parse an example.

[The remaining three rules to be recapitulated in the same way.]

Exercises.

Misis'tis, mitto, † ad eos Africā'num, s. n., --us,
Africanus
servum, s. n., --us, præcip'ue fi'dum, --us, --a, --um.
slave remarkably trusty

Frā'ter --ris ejus stē'tit, *sto*, † ante fō'res. † Iste
 brother
 homo † discēs'sit, *discedo*, † ab urbe, *s. n.*, *urbs*. Lé-
 gā'ti, *s. n.*, --us, quibus'cum ivis'ti in Gal'līam.
 ambassador Gaul
 Ex'éunt dō'mo, *s. n.*, --us, † admōnen'tes 2. illum
 [See p. 157.]
 offic'i, *s. n.*, --um. Germā'ni, --us, --a, --um, relī-
 duty The German
 quē'runt, *relinquo*, † sua omnia, --is, --is, --e, cis
 all
 montes, *s. n.*, *mons*. † Coram senā'tu, *s. n.*, --us,
 dixit, *dico*, † ignorā're. 1. Illi qui pri'mi, --us, --a,
 was ignorant first
 --um, venē'runt auxiliō, *s. n.*, --um, irrūē'runt, ir-
 reinforcement
 ruo, † in op'pīdum, *s. n.*, --um. Homo qui accusā'-
 town accuse
 tus est cædis, *s. n.*, --es, jam intrō'it templum, *s.*
 murder already [See p. 157.] temple
n., --um, Apol'linis, *s. n.*, *Apollo*. † Mil'itis, *s. n.*,
miles, attulē'runt multum, *s. n.*, --us, --a, --um,
 soldier [See p. 164.] much
 præ'dæ erga flū'men: *s. n.*, *flumen*. Divīsē'runt,
 booty river
 divido, † inter se cap'tivos, *s. n.*, --us, insuē'tos, --us,
 captive unaccus-
 --a, --um, lābō'ris, *s. n.*, *labor*. Servus, --i, quem
 tomed labor
 pater, --ris, meus, --a, --um, mī'sit mē'cum ab'it.
 father [See p. 157.]
 Pū'er, --i, occīdit, --o, † sub mū'ro, *s. n.*, --us, in
 The boy wall
 conspec'tū, *s. n.*, --us, omnium. Sic allōcū'tus, *al-*
 sight thus

loquor, † *amī'cum*, *s. n.*, --*us*, ex'it aulā. Intra
 friend. [See p. 157.] hall
muros erant homines infes'ti, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*, civ'ib'us, *s. n.*, --*is*. † *Mer'gitur*, --*o*, † *mento*, *s. n.*, --*um*,
 hostile chin
tenus. *Condīdē'runt*, *condo*, † *subter terram au-*
 ground
rum, *s. n.*, --*um*, *quod superfuit*. *Content'us*, --*a*,
 gold [See p. 152.] Content
 --*um*, *sorte*, *s. n.*, *sors*, *pastor*, † *jācē'bat* 2. *juxta*
 lot lye
rī'pam flū'mīnis. *Ecquis vestrum audī'vit aliquid*
 bank [See p. 80.]
novi, --*us*, --*a*, --*um*, *de impērātō're*? *Dū'cit*, --*o*, †
 new general
amī'cos *subter fastig'ia*, *s. n.*, --*um*, *tecti*, *s. n.*, --*um*.
 battlements roof
Erip'uit, *io*, † *sēip'sum morti*, *s. n.*, *mors*, *abdīcan'*
 death withdraw
do 1. *se māgistrā'tu*, *s. n.*, --*us*. *Ob eam causam nol-*
 magistracy cause
uit adire hominem partic'ipem, *s. n.*, --*s*, *scel'ère*, *s.*
 [See p. 157.] partaker
n., *scelus*. *Præ'mia*, *s. n.*, --*um*, *non data sunt*, *do*, †
 guilt Reward
ei pro factis, *s. n.*, --*um*. *Jācēā'mus sub umbrā*.
 deed Let us lye shade
Jussus, *jubeo*, † *exced'ère*, --*o*, † *scelerā'tā*, --*us*, --*a*,
 accursed
 --*um*, *terrā*, *stā'tim par'uit* 2. *Mālē'bat mănē're*,
 land immediately obey
 --*eo*, † *pē'nes vos*. *Dixis'ti te fū'gère*, --*io*, *solum*,
 --*us*, --*a*, --*um*, *clam civ'ibus*. *Fruor ō'tiō*, *s. n.*, --*um*,
 alone ease
fronde, *s. n.*, *frons*, *super vir'idē*, --*is*, --*is*, --*e*. *Noc-*
 grass green

CHAPTER VI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

Explan. The word *conjunction* is derived from a Latin word, signifying to *join together*, and is used as the name of the sixth class of Latin words; because words of this class serve to *join* or connect expressions.

DEFINITION. A conjunction is an indeclinable part of speech, which connects words, clauses, or sentences; as, *Tu ET ego*, thou and I.

OBSERV. Conjunctions may be divided into two principal classes:

I. *Copulative*, (coupling, or joining;) as, *Et, Ac, Atque*, (and,) &c.

II. *Disjunctive*, (disjoining, or, separating;) as, *Aut, Vel*, (either, or,) &c.

Note 1st. The copulative conjunction *que*, (both, and;) and the disjunctive *ve*, (whether, or;) are inseparable from other words; as, *Rudis, --is, --e, ignā'rus'que*, rude and ignorant. *Ignā'vus, --a, --um, domi' ve militā' ve*, idle, whether at home or in war; i. e. abroad.

2d. The disjunctive *ne*, (whether,) when annexed to another word, makes an interrogation; as, *Abiitne?* Is he gone? or. (literally) Whether is he gone? (Supply *or not*.)

Recapitulation.

What is the word *conjunction* derived from? How is it used? Why? What is a conjunction? Give an example. Into how many principal classes may conjunctions be divided? What does the word *copulative* mean? Give examples of the copulative conjunctions. What does the word *disjunctive* mean? Give examples of the disjunctive conjunctions. What do you observe of the conjunctions *que* and *ve*. Give examples. What is the power of the disjunctive *ne*, when annexed to another word? Give an example.

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE I. Conjunctions usually connect the same moods of verbs, and the same cases of nouns, pronouns, and participles; as, *Legit et scribit, -o. †* He reads and writes.

Exception. Ut, that; Quo, that; Licet, although; Ne, lest, and other conjunctions of similar signification, are commonly followed by the subjunctive mood; as, *Lego UT discam, --o. †* I read that I may learn.

Recap. What moods and cases do conjunctions usually connect? Give an example. How will you parse a verb or a noun, &c., depending on a conjunction? Mention and parse an example. What mood commonly follows *ut, quo, licet, &c.*? Give an example. How will you parse a verb depending on *ut, quo, licet, ne, &c.* or any conjunction of similar signification? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Mor'tuus est, *mrior, †* Massil'iae, et
Marseilles
sepul'tus est, *sepelior, †* Paris'is, -i. Ab'it A-
Paris [See p. 157.]
thē'nas, et vē'nit, -io, † Lacedæm'onem. Cī'ta,
Athens Lacedemon
-us, -a, -um, mors, -tis, aut læ'ta, -us, -a, -um,
speedy death joyful
victō'ria, -æ, fréquen'ter, acci'dit, -o, † mil'iti, s.
victory frequently
n., miles. † Mis'imus, mitto, † epis'tolas ad sorō'-
letters
res, s. n., soror, † et frā'tres, s. n., frater, ejus. Scrip-
brother
sē'runt, scribo, † et locū'ti sunt, loquor, † elegantis-
sime, pos., *eleganter*, om'nium, -is, -is, -e. Tī'-
elegant.y all
met 2. ne obliviscā'ris mandā'ta, s. n., -um, con'su-
fear lest command

lis, *s. n.*, *consul*. ‡ Discet, -o, ‡ dum'modo stū'deat. 2.
 consul provided study

Prid'ie vulnerā'tus est et lā'tus est in castra,
 On the day before wound

pl. *n.*, *castra*. ‡ Tanta, -us, -a, -um, est discor'dja,
 so great discord

-æ, ventō'rum, *s. n.* -us, ut, nī'si Æ'olus, -i, rē'-
 wind unless Eolus

gat, -o, ‡ eos, lā'niant 4. mundum, *s. n.*, -us. Illi
 tear world

erant prin'cipes, *s. n.*, *princeps*, ‡ apud eos, et co-
 lē'ban'tur, -o, ‡ ab om'nibus. Egē'runt, ago, ‡ ita,

etiam'si sci'rent 4. te prohibē're. 2. Adscis'citur,
 although know forbid

-o, ‡ amī'cos atque consanguin'éos. Exspec'ta 1.
 friend relation wait

dum scrip'sero. Profisciscam'ini, -or, ‡ tac'ite quo
 till silently

ea'tis tū'tius; pos., tute. Pō'tes cap'ere, -io, ‡ ur-
 safely

bem, *s. n.*, *urbs*, etiamsi profisciscā'ris cras. Dis-
 city although to-morrow

ces'sit, *discedo*, ut vitaret 1. prae'lium, *s. n.*, -um.
 withdraw shun battle.

RULE II. Two or more nouns, or pronouns, when connected by a copulative conjunction, require *plural* nouns, pronouns, and verbs; as, *Demosthenes*, (-is, mas.) *et Cicero* (-nis) *oratores*, (*s. n.*, *orator*;) *Demosthenes and Cicero, the orators.*

Recap. When two or more nouns or pronouns are connected by a copulative conjunction, in what number must the word or words be, which agree with them? Give an example. How will you parse a word which agrees with two or more nouns or pronouns, connected by a copulative conjunction? Mention and parse an example.

Exercises. Soc'rātes, *-is, mas.*, et Plā'to, *-nis*,
 Socrates Plato
 qui erant sapien'tes: sapiens. Marcus, *-i*, Tul'-
 wise Marcus Tul-
 lius, *-i*, Cic'ero, *-nis*, et Cnē'ius, *-i*, Pompē'ius,
 lius Cicero Cneius Pompey
-i, vī'ri, s. n., vir, ‡ prāclā'rī, *-us, -a, -um.* Lep'-
 illustrious Lep-
 idus, *-i*, Antō'nīus, *-i*, et Octā'vīus, *-i*, cūpīdī, *-us*,
 idus Antony Octavius de-
-a, -um, domīnan'di 1. inī'mī'cī, *-us, -a, -um, pā'*
 sious reign hostile
 trīæ. Glō'rīa, *-æ*, et immortal'itas, *-atis*, sunt
 country Glory immortality
 prā'mīa, *s. n., -um, virtū'tis, s. n., virtus. ‡* Clau'-
 reward Clau-
 dīo, *s. n., -us*, Nērō'ne, *s. n., Nero*, et Livīo, *s. n.,*
 dius Nero Livius
-us, Salīnātō're, s. n., Salinator, [supply *existenti-*
 Salinator
bus, -o, ‡] consū'lībus, *s. n., consul. ‡*
 consul.

CHAPTER VII.—INTERJECTIONS.

Explan. The word *interjection* is derived from a Latin word which signifies *thrown between*, and is used as the name of the seventh class of Latin words; because words of that class have seldom any connexion with the other words in a sentence, but are *thrown in between* them, to express abrupt emotion, or sudden feeling.

DEFINITION. An interjection is an indeclinable word, thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express emotion; as, *Amavi, HEU, nimium!* indignum, --us, --a, --um, *amore*: (*s. n., amor.*) I have loved, alas! too much, one unworthy of love.

OBSERV. Interjections are classified according to the emotions which they express; thus,

<i>Joy,</i>	<i>Ē'vax! Hey!</i>
<i>Grief,</i>	<i>Ah! ah! Ē'heu! alas!</i>
<i>Approbation,</i>	<i>Eu'ge! well done!</i>
<i>Aversion,</i>	<i>Ap'age! away!</i>
<i>&c.</i>	

Recapitulation.

What is the word *interjection* derived from? How is it used? Why? What is an interjection? Give an example. How are interjections classified? Mention examples.

SYNTAX OF INTERJECTIONS.

RULE I. The interjections *O! Heu!* and *Proh!* are followed sometimes by a nominative, and sometimes by an accusative, but oftener by a vocative; as, *O sancte, (--us, --a, --um,) Jupiter!* (s. n., Jupiter. ‡) *O holy Jupiter!*

II. *Hei!* and *Væ!* are followed by a dative; as, *HEI mihi! Ah! me.*

Recap. What cases follow the interjections *O! heu!* and *proh!*? Give an example. How will you parse a word declined by cases, and dependent on *O! heu!* or *proh!*? Mention and parse an example.

Rule II. recapitulated in the same way.

Exercises. *O formō'se, --us, --a, --um, pū'er! s.*
handsome

n., puer, --i. Heu me mis'erum! miser, --a, --um.
boy wretched

Proh! dī'i, s. n., deus, ‡ immortā'les! --is, --is, --e.
O immortal

Væ vobis! Heu! miséran'de, s. n., --us, --a, --um,
Wo miserable

hō'mo, s. n., homo. ‡ O fortūnā'tos, --us, --a, --um,
fortunate

nim'ium agric'olas! --a. ‡ O bonus amī'cus! --i.
too friend.

CHAPTER VIII.—DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

Section I.—Derivation.

Explan. The word *derivation* comes from a Latin word signifying to spring, or *flow* from, and is used to designate the manner in which words flow, or are formed from, one another.

DEFINITION. Derivation is that part of etymology which enables us to trace backward to a primitive, or original, word, every word which is not itself a primitive; thus, the substantive *Amor* --is, (love,) we trace to the verb *Amo*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

OBSERV. I. Some substantives are derived from other substantives. Of these, the most remarkable class is that which consists of *Diminutives*.

Explan. The word *diminutive* signifies diminishing.

DEFINITION. Diminutive substantives are those which are formed by adding to the simple word the termination *ulus* or *lus* for masculines, and *ula* or *la* for feminines; as, *Paer*, a boy: *Puerulus*, a little boy.

OBSERV. II. Some substantives are derived from adjectives. Among these are *Abstract* substantives.

Explan. The word *abstract* comes from a Latin word which signifies *drawn away*, and is used to designate those substantives which express a quality *drawn away*, as it were, or separated, from its object; thus, *Justit'ia*, (justice,) presents to our minds the quality of justice, abstracted or separated from an object.

DEFIN. Abstract substantives are those which are formed from adjectives, by adding to the genitive or the dative case the terminations *tia*, *tas*, and *tudo*, and which express abstract qualities; thus, from the adjective *justus*, (just,) is derived the substantive *justitia*: from the adjective *facilis*, (easy,) is derived the substantive *facilitas*, (easiness): from the adjective *amplus*, comes the substantive *amplitudo*.

OBSERV. III. Some substantives are derived from verbs, and are thence called *Verbal* substantives.

DEFIN. Verbal substantives are those which are derived from various parts, but usually from the supines of verbs, by the addition of the syllables *or*, *io*, *us*, and *ura*; as, from the verb *amo*, comes the substantive *amātor*, (lover;); from the verb *lego*, comes the substantive *lec'tio*, (reading, or lesson;); from the verb *lū'geo*, (grieve,) comes the substantive *luctus*, (grief;); from the verb *creo*, (create,) comes the substantive *crēatūra*, (creature.)

ADJECTIVES.

OBSERV. I. Some adjectives are derived from other adjectives; and, in name, form, and signification, resemble Diminutive substantives; thus, from the primitive adjective *parvus*, (small,) comes the diminutive *parvulus*, (very small.)

OBSERV. II. Some adjectives are derived from substantives. Among these are adjectives which signify abundance, and are formed by the addition of the termination *osus*; as, from *ventus*, (wind,) comes the adjective *vento'sus*, (windy.)

OBSERV. III. Some adjectives are derived from verbs, and are thence called *Verbal* adjectives.

DEFIN. Verbal adjectives are those which are participles in form, or which are formed by the addition of the terminations *ax*, *idus*, and *bilis*, and are expressive, commonly, of a state of the mind; thus, from the verb *amo*, comes the participial adjective *amans*: from *doceo*, (teach,) comes *doc'tus*, (learned;) from *cū'pio*, (take or receive,) comes *cā'pax*, (capacious, or capable;) from *cū'pio*, (desire,) comes *cū'pidus*, (desirous;) from *amo*, comes *amab'ilis*, (lovely.)

OBSERV. IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *Hodier'nus*, *--a*, *--um*, (of this day,) from *hō'die*, (to-day.)

PRONOUNS.

See page 79th, &c.

VERBS.

OBSERV. I. Some verbs are derived from other verbs, and among these are,

1st. *Frequentatives.*

Explan. *Frequentative* verbs are so called because they commonly signify to do a thing *frequently*.

DEFIN. Frequentative verbs express frequency of action, and are formed, in verbs of the first conjugation, by changing the termination of the last supine into *ilo* ; as, from the simple verb *clamo*, (cry out,) *supine*, *clamatu*, comes the frequentative *clam'ilo*, (cry out frequently.) In all the other conjugations, the change is merely of the last letter of the supine ; thus, from the simple word *ter'reo*, (terrify,) *supine*, *ter'ritu*, comes the frequentative *ter'rito*, (put in continual terror.)

Note 1st. From some frequentatives are formed others ; thus, from the simple verb *curro*, (run,) comes the frequentative *curso*, (run fast and hurriedly,) and from *curso*, comes *cur'silo*, (continue running up and down.)

2d. All frequentative verbs are of the first conjugation.

2d. Inceptives.

Explan. *Inceptive* comes from a Latin word signifying to commence, or begin, and designates those verbs which represent a thing in an incipient, (commencing,) or progressive state.

DEFIN. Inceptive verbs denote incipency or progression, and are formed from the active, indicative, present, sing. num., sec. pers., of simple verbs ; thus, *caleo*, (I am hot ;) *cales'co*, (I grow hot.)

Note. All inceptives are *neuter* in signification, and are of the *third* conjugation.

OBSERV. II. Some verbs are derived from substantives ; as, *Fraudo*, --*are*, (to defraud,) from *fraus*, --*dis*, (fraud.)

ADVERBS.

OBSERV. I. Some adverbs are derived from substantives. These adverbs terminate commonly in *tim* and *tus* ; as from the substantive *pars*, (part,) comes the adverb *partim*, (partly :) from the substantive *radex*, (root,) comes the adverb *radic'itus*, (radically.)

II. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and terminate in *e*, *o*, *um*, *ter*, *tus*, and *tim* ; thus, from the adjective *malus*, (bad,) comes the adverb *male*, (badly, or ill :) from the adjective *falsus*, (false,) comes the adverb *falso*, (falsely :) from *tantus*, (so great,) comes *tantum*, (so much :) from *gravis*, (heavy,) comes *grav'iter*, (heavily :) from *antiquus*,

(ancient,) *antiq'ultus*, (anciently :) from *privā'tus*, (private,) *privā'tim*, (privately.)

III. Some adverbs are derived from adjective pronouns ; thus, from *ille*, comes *illic*, (there,) *illuc*, (thither,) &c. : from *hic*, comes *hic*, (here ;) and from *is*, comes *eo*, (thither ;) &c.

IV. Some adverbs are formed from verbs and participles ; as, from *strictus*, the participle of *stringo*, † (bind,) comes the adverb *strictim*, (closely.)

V. A few adverbs are derived from prepositions ; as, from the preposition *in*, come the adverbs *intus* and *inter*, (within.)

Recapitulation.

What does the word *derivation* come from ? How is it used ? What is derivation ? Give an example. Of substantives derived from substantives, which class is the most remarkable ? What does the word *diminutive* signify ? What are diminutive substantives ? Give an example. What class of substantives is named among them, which are derived from adjectives ? What does the word *abstract* come from ? How is it used ? Mention an example. What are abstract substantives ? Give examples. Why are verbal substantives so called ? What are verbal substantives ? Mention examples.

What do you observe of those adjectives which are derived from other adjectives ? Give an example. Among adjectives which are derived from substantives, what class is mentioned ? Give an example. Why are verbal adjectives so called ? What are verbal adjectives ? Give examples.

Mention the first class of verbs derived from verbs. Why are frequentative verbs so called ? What are frequentative verbs ? How are they formed in the first conjugation ? Give an example. How are these verbs formed in the other conjugations ? Give an example. Are frequentative verbs always formed from primitive verbs ? Mention an example. Of what conjugation are all frequentative verbs ? Mention the second class of verbs derived from verbs ? What does the word *inceptive* come from ? What does it designate ? Define inceptive verbs. Give an example. Of what class of signification are all inceptive verbs ?—of what conjugation ? Give an example of verbs derived from substantives.

How do adverbs which are derived from substantives, terminate? Give examples. How do adverbs terminate, which are derived from adjectives? Give examples. Mention examples of adverbs derived from adjective pronouns. Give an example of adverbs derived from verbs and participles—of adverbs derived from prepositions.

Give the *dérivation* of the following words. Hom'ulus, dwarf; Fortitū'do, fortitude; Æquitas, equity; Mæstit'ia, sadness; Fac'tio, deed, &c.; Tenel'us, very tender; Copiō'sus, plentiful; Rā'pax, rapacious; Tractab'ilis, tractable; Ag'ito, agitate; Tépes'co, grow warm; Laudo, praise; Fur'tim, secretly; Bénig'ne, kindly; Vé'ro, truly; Elégan'ter, elegantly.

Section II.—Composition.

Explan. The word *composition* is derived from a Latin word which signifies, literally, *placing*, or putting, together, and designates the putting together, or combining, of two or more simple words, so as to form a compound.

DEFIN. Composition is that part of etymology, which treats of the formation of compound words, and enables us to recognize the simple words of which a compound consists; thus, the verb *expono*, (lay out, or expose,) is compounded of the preposition *ex*, and the simple verb *pono*, (place.)

SUBSTANTIVES.

OBSERV. I. Some substantives are compounded of substantives; as, *Materfamilias*, (matron,) in which the simple words are *mater*, † (mother,) and *familia*, † (family.)

II. Some are compounded of adjectives and substantives; as, *Triumvir*, † (one of three men,) in which the simple words are *tres*, † (three,) and *vir*, † (man.)

III. Some are compounded of substantives and verbs; as, *Armiger*, (armor-bearer,) in which the simple words are *armo*, † (arms,) and *gero*, † (carry.)

IV. Some are compounded of adverbs and verbs; as, *Benefic'ium*, (good deed, or kindness,) in which the simple words are *bene*, (well,) and *fā'cio*, (do,) modified into *ficio*, and receiving the termination of a substantive.

ADJECTIVES.

OBSERV. I. Adjectives are sometimes compounded of adjectives and substantives ; as, *Magnan'imus*, --a, --um, (magnanimous,)—simple words, *magnus*, --a, --um, (great,) and *animus*, --i, (mind.)

II. Adjectives are sometimes compounded of substantives and verbs ; as, *Jurid'icus*, --a, --um, (relating to law,)—simple words, *jus*, *juris*, (law,) and *dico*, † (speak, or say,) modified by an adjective termination.

III. Adjectives are sometimes compounded of adverbs and verbs ; as, *Mālev'olus*, --a, --um, (malevolent,)—simple words, *male*, (ill,) and *volo*, (wish,) modified by an adjective termination.

VERBS.

OBSERV. I. Some verbs are compounded of verbs ; as, *Labefā'cio*, (undermine, cause to fall,)—simple words, *labor*, † (glide, or fall,) and *facio*, † (make, or cause.)

II. Some are compounded of substantives and verbs ; as, *Bellig'ero*, (carry on war,)—simple words, *bellum*, --i, (war,) and *gero*, † (carry on, &c.)

III. Some are compounded of adjectives and verbs ; as, *Madefā'cio*, (moisten,)—simple words, *mad'idus*, --a, --um, (moist,) and *fā'cio*, † (make.)

IV. Some are compounded of adverbs and verbs ; as, *Sāt'isfā'cio*, (satisfy,)—simple words, *sā'tis*, (enough,) and *fā'cio*, (make.)

ADVERBS.

OBSERV. I. Adverbs are sometimes compounded of adjectives and substantives ; as, *Magnop'ere*, (greatly,) of *magnus*, (great,) and *opus*, --eris, (work.)

II. Sometimes of pronouns and substantives ; as, *Quom'edo*, (how,) of *quis*, (what,) and *modus*, --i, (manner.)

III. Sometimes of adverbs and verbs ; as, *Ū'bivis*, (where you please,) of *ubi*, (where,) and *volo*, (wish.)

IV. Sometimes of adverbs and conjunctions ; thus, *Sicut*, (as,) of the adverb *sic*, (so,) and the conjunction *ut*, (as.)

V. Sometimes of conjunctions ; thus, *Vel'ut*, (as,) of *vel*, (or, &c.) and *ut*, (as.)

VI. Sometimes of several words of different kinds ; thus, *Nū'diustēr'tiūs*, (three days ago,) of the adverb *nunc*, (now,) the substantive *dies*,† (day,) and the adjective *tertius*, (third.)

PREPOSITIONS.

OBSERV. Prepositions are used in combination with most other parts of speech ; thus,

1st, With substantives ; as, *Adminis'ter*, (assistant,)—simple words, *ad*, (to,) and *minis'ter*, --ri, (servant.)

2d, With adjectives ; as, *Admirab'ilis*, (admirable,)—simple words, *ad*, and *mirab'ilis*, (wonderful.)

3d, With pronouns ; as, *Mē'cum*, (with me,)—simple words, *me*, (ablative of *ego*,) and the preposition *cum*, (with.)

4th, With verbs ; as, *Admō'neo*, (admonish,)—simple words, *ad*, and *moneo*, (advise.)

5th, With adverbs ; as, *Subin'de*, (thereupon, &c.)—simple words, *sub*, (under,) and *inde*, (thence.)

6th, With prepositions ; as, *Ex adver'sum*, (over against,)—simple words, *ex*, (out of,) and *adversum*, (against.)

Note 1st. The following words are called *inseparable* prepositions ; because they are never found separate from other words, but are always used as parts of compound words :

<i>Am</i> ,	round about ;	as,	<i>Am'bio</i> ,	surround.
<i>Di</i> ,	} asunder ;	as,	<i>Dīvel'lo</i> ,	pull asunder.
<i>Dis</i> ,			<i>Dīstrāho</i> ,	draw asunder.
<i>Re</i> ,	again ;	as,	<i>Rel'ego</i> ,	read again.
<i>Se</i> ,	aside ;	as,	<i>Sepō'no</i> ,	lay aside.
<i>Con</i> ,	together ;	as,	<i>Concres'co</i> ,	grow together.

2d. The following prepositions sometimes undergo a change of their final letter, so as to avoid harshness of sound in a compound word : *Ad*, *ab*, *con*, *circum*, *in* ; thus, *Af'fēro*, *affer're*, *attuli*, *allā'tum* ; for *adfero*, &c. : *Au'fēro*, *aufer're*, *abs'tuli*, *ablā'tum* ; for *abfero*, &c. : *Con'fēro*, *confer're*, *con'tūli*, *collatum* for *conlatum*. *Compono*, *componere*, &c. ; for *conpono*, &c. : *Circun'do*, *circun'dāre*, *circun'dēdi*, *circun'dā'tum* ; for *circumdo*, &c.

CONJUNCTIONS.

OBSERV. I. Conjunctions are compounded sometimes of conjunctions ; as, *Atque*, (and,) of *at*, (but,) and *que*, (and.)

II. Sometimes of pronouns and prepositions ; as, *Qua-prop'ter*, (wherefore,) of *Qui*, (who or which,) and *propter*, (on account of.)

III. Sometimes of conjunctions and adverbs ; as, *Siqui'dem*, (if,) of *si*, (if,) and *qui'dem*, (indeed.)

INTERJECTIONS

are, with one or two exceptions, simple words.

Recapitulation.

What is the word *composition* derived from ? What does it designate ? What is composition ? Give an example. Give an example of a substantive compounded of substantives. Of what substantives is it compounded ? Give an example of a substantive compounded of a substantive and an adjective. Of what is this example compounded ? Give an example of a substantive compounded of a substantive and a verb. Of what words is this example compounded ?

[Similar questions on the remaining observations.]

Reduce the following compound words to their simples. *Paterfamil'ias*, father of a family ; *Unānim'itas*, unanimity ; *Op'ifex*, workman ; *Maléf'ic'ium*, mischief ; *Pest'ifer*, --a, --um, (simple subst., pestis,) pestiferous ; *Benef'icus*, --a, --um, beneficent ; *Commonesā'cio*, ‡ remind ; *Pacif'ico*, 1. pacify ; *Benedi'co*, ‡ bless ; *Multim'odis*, in many ways ; *Quovis*, where you choose ; *Commūtā'tio*, --nis, change ; *Immi'tis*, --is, --e, harsh ; *Vobis'cum*, with you ; *Confic'io*, ‡ finish ; *Dinū'méro*, 1. enumerate ; *Displic'eo*, 2. displease ; *Rescribo*, ‡ write in reply ; *Vē'rumenim'vdro*, yet ; *Att'amen*, however ; *Etiam'si*, although.

RECAPITULATION OF ETYMOLOGY.

[The learner has finished an *analysis** of etymology, and is now prepared to arrange this department of grammar synthetically; that the knowledge which he has acquired, may assume a systematic form, and make a full, correct, and lasting impression on his mind.—The matter which follows, is, it will be observed, the same with what is commonly laid down as *preliminary* general views; but that its proper place is at the close, and not at the commencement of the subject, will appear on a moment's reflection. If *generals* are nothing else than assemblages of *particulars*, and if general ideas are therefore necessarily *founded on* particular ideas; a learner cannot consistently be required to take, at his outset, a general view of a science, whilst he is yet ignorant of the particulars which constitute such a view of the subject. But when he has applied his mind to the *particulars* which form a science, he may, with propriety, and with advantage, attempt to arrange his knowledge in the systematic form of *general views*.]

How many classes of words or parts of speech are there in Latin? *Here observe that Latin grammarians usually treat the participle as a separate part of speech; and if this view of etymology is taken, the parts of speech will amount to eight. Such an arrangement, however, would seem to make it necessary that the gerund and the supine should also rank as distinct classes of words; for they are equally entitled to this distinction.* How many parts of speech are inflected? What is the first class of Latin words called? How are words of this class subdivided? How are substantives divided by their signification? What is declension? How many declensions are there? How are the declensions distinguished? What is gender? How many genders are there?

* When the word *analysis* is used in this work, it is of course not taken in its strictly philosophical sense, in which it signifies reducing to *principles*; but in the practical acceptance of reducing a thing to its least, or *simplest parts*.

What does the masculine include?—the feminine?—the neuter? How is the word number used? How many numbers are there? Define them. How is the word case used? How many cases are there? Define them. Compare Latin and English cases. What is meant by the root of a word? What by the termination? Recite the terminations of the first declension—of the second—the third—the fourth—the fifth. Have proper names usually a plural number? What is the rule on the accusative and vocative of neuter substantives?—the rule on the plur. nom. and voc. of all substantives?—the rule on the plur. dat. and ab.?

What is the second class of nouns? What does the word *adjective* mean? To what declensions exclusively do adjectives belong? How is the declension of an adjective known? Define adjectives of the first and second declension—of the third. How are adjectives declined? What is the difference between Latin and English adjectives? Recite the terminations of adjectives of the first and second declensions—of adjectives of the third declension. What is comparison? How many degrees of comparison are there? Define adjectives of the positive degree,—of the comparative,—of the superlative. How are the degrees of comparison formed?

What is the name of the second class of Latin words? Why are words of this class called pronouns? How are pronouns divided by inflection? Why are substantive pronouns so called? How many substantive pronouns are there? Why are adjective pronouns so called? How many adjective pronouns are there? Name the substantive pronouns. Decline them. Name the adjective pronouns. Decline the four examples of simple adjective pronouns. How are most of the compound adjective pronouns declined? Compare the classification of Latin and English pronouns.

What is the name of the third part of speech? For what purposes are verbs used? How are verbs classified by their signification? What is meant by regular verbs? What by irregular verbs? Explain and define the word conjugation. How many conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? Explain the meaning and the use of the word voice? How many voices are there? Define them. What is mood? How many moods are there? Define them. What is tense? How many tenses are there? Define them. What is number? How many numbers are there? Define them. What

is person? How many persons are there? Define them. Compare the parts of Latin and English verbs. What is meant by the formation of a verb? Mention the manner in which the tenses, &c., of a verb are formed. Recite the terminations of the first conjugation—of the second—of the third—of the fourth. Define deponent, common, and neuter-passive, verbs. How are they conjugated? How may irregular verbs be subdivided? Define the two classes. How many irregular verbs of the second class are there? Mention them. What are impersonal verbs? How are they conjugated? What are defective verbs? Compare the classification of Latin and English verbs.

What is the fourth part of speech? Define an adverb. Into what two principal classes are adverbs divided?

What is the fifth part of speech? Define a preposition. How are prepositions divided?

What is the sixth part of speech? Define a conjunction. How are conjunctions divided?

What is the seventh part of speech? Define an interjection? How are interjections classified?

What is derivation? What is etymological composition?

PART III.—SYNTAX.

RECAPITULATION OF SYNTAX.

OBSERV. ALL the rules of syntax which have been subjoined to every part of speech as it occurred, may be classed under two heads: *Concord* and *Government*.

Explan. *Concord* signifies *agreement*, and accordingly embraces all those rules of syntax by which one word *agrees* with another. *Government* includes all those rules by which one word *governs* another.

1st method of recapitulating. Class all the rules of syntax under concord and government, by going back to the first rule of syntax, and reciting as follows :

‘First rule of concord, Rule I. on the syntax of substantives: “When two or more substantives, &c.”—Second rule, &c.’ [Proceed in the same way with every rule of concord, throughout the syntax of the parts of speech.]

‘First rule of government, Rule II. on the syntax of substantives: “When two substantives signify different things, &c.”—Second rule, &c.’ [Proceed in the same way with every rule of government, throughout.]

2d method. Answer the first question contained in the recapitulation of every rule of syntax, throughout the parts of speech. [See the recapitulations subjoined to the rules.]

3d method. Arrange the rules of syntax, under *the parts of speech*, in the following order :

Substantives.

What rules apply to the nominative case?—to the genitive?—the dative?—the accusative?—the vocative?—the ablative?

Adjectives.

What rule applies to adjectives?

Pronouns.

What rules apply to pronouns?

Verbs.

What rule applies to the number and person of every verb? What rule applies to the infinitive mood? What rule applies to the gender, number, and case, of participles? By what rule are gerunds regulated? What rules apply to supines?

Adverbs.

What rule applies to adverbs?

Conjunctions.

What rule applies to conjunctions?

GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

I. Every sentence contains a verb and its nominative, understood, if not expressed; thus, *Heus, Dave!* Ho, Davus! [Supply *Audi tu.*]

II. Every nominative case which is not used as agreeing with a substantive, or attached to an intransitive verb, is nominative to a verb understood, if not expressed; as, *Ille docet --eo t me, et ego,* [supply *doceo,*] *te.*

III. Every personal, (not impersonal,) and finite verb, (not in the infinitive mood,) must have a nominative understood, if not expressed; thus, *Legis.* [Supply *tu.*]

IV. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, and participle, must agree with a substantive, understood, if not expressed; thus, *omnia, (--is, --is, --e,) bona:* [Supply *negotia* after both words:] all good things.

Recap. What general rule of syntax applies to every sentence?—every nominative case?—every finite and personal verb?—every adjective, adjective pronoun, and participle?

What must you do with a sentence in which no nominative and verb are expressed? How will you commonly parse a nominative case?—a personal and finite verb?—adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles? Mention examples to every rule.

PART IV.—PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.—QUANTITY.

Explan. 1st. *PROSODY* signifies, according to its derivation, the part of grammar which relates to *poetry*.

2d. *Quantity* signifies the *quantity of time* taken up in pronouncing a letter or a syllable.

OBSERV. Quantity regards syllables as long, short, common, or arbitrary.

DEFIN. I. Long and short syllables, in Latin prosody, correspond to long and short syllables in English pronunciation.

Exceptions. In dissyllables containing a single consonant at the beginning of the second syllable, as well as in many other words, there is a difference between quantity; and pronunciation; thus, *Bonus lægo*, &c., are pronounced *bōnus lægo*.

Note. For long and short syllables, but two marks are used in prosody: a short dash (—) for long syllables, and an abbreviator (v) for short ones.

DEFIN. II. A syllable is called common, if it is sometimes found long, and sometimes short; thus, *u* in *volueris*,—pronounced sometimes *vol' ueris*, sometimes *volū' cris*.

DEFIN. III. A syllable is arbitrary, which is not regulated by any rule, but is assumed as long or short on the authority of the poet. A syllable of this kind, is accordingly said to be long or short by *authority*; as, *e* in *lægo*.

GENERAL RULES.

I. Diphthongs are always long; as, *Āura*, *lātus*.

II. One vowel immediately before another, is short; as, *Mūs*: so *nihil*, &c.; *h* being, in versification, considered not as a letter, but merely an aspiration, or breathing.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as *Nīl*, for *nihil*.

IV. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long ; as *Ārma*, *āxis*.

Note 1st. A vowel thus situated, is, from its *position*, or place, said to be long by *position*.

2d. The double consonants are *j*, *x*, *z*.

3d. It is not indispensably required that the two consonants, or the double consonant, be in the same word with the vowel. A vowel at the end of a word, is long by position, if the next word begins with two consonants, and even in those words in which the final vowel is otherwise short ; thus, *Illā spectat*.

Exception. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, is common ; thus, *Tenēbræ*, or *tenēbræ*.

Explan. Mute or silent letters are those which cannot be articulated without the aid of a vowel. They are *b*, *p*, *d*, *t*, and *c* and *g* hard.—*Liquid*, or flowing, letters are those which flow into the sound of others. They are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*.

RULES ON INITIAL SYLLABLES.

I. Preterites, (perfect tenses,) and supines of two syllables, lengthen the first ; as, *Vēni*, *visum*, &c.

II. Preterites which double the first syllable, have the first two syllables short ; as, *pēpēri*.

Exceptions to the above rules. *Bibi*, scīdi from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, *stēti* : *Sātum* from *sero*, *cūtum* from *ci'eo*, *lūtum* from *lino*, *sūtum* from *sino*, *stātum* from *sisto*, *ūtum* from *eo*, *dātum* from *do*, *rātum* from the compounds of *ruo*, *quītum* from *queo*, *rātus* from *reor* : *Cēcidi* from *cædo*.

RULES ON MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. Substantives of the third declension, which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e*, *i*, and *u*, short ; as, *Pietātis*, *honōris*, *sidēris*, *lapīdis*, *murmūris*.

Explan. A substantive is said to increase, when it has more syllables in the oblique cases, than in the nominative ; thus, *pietas*, *pietatis*.

II. Substantives of the plural number, which increase, make *a*, *e*, and *o*, long ; *i* and *u* short ; as, *Musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum*, *regibus*, *portūbus*.

IV. Verbs which increase, have *a*, *e*, and *o*, long ; *i* and *u* short ; as, *Amāre*, *docēre*, *amāte*, *legimus*, *volūmus*.

Except some parts of the third and fourth conjugations ; thus, *Legere* and *audire*.

Explān. A verb is said to increase in those parts which have more syllables than the active, indic., pres., sing. num., sec. pers. ; thus, *Amas*, *amabamus*.

RULES ON FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. *A* final, of words declined by cases, is short ; as, *Musā*, *templā*, *capitā*, *bonā*, &c.

Except in the sing. ab. of the first declension ; as, *Musā*.

II. *A* final, of words not declined by cases, is long ; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, &c.

III. *E* final is short ; as, *Natē*, *currē*, *antē*.

Exception. Monosyllables are long ; as, *Mē*, *tē*, *sē*.

IV. *I* final is long ; as, *Dominī*, *patri*, *docerī*.

Exceptions. In *mihi*, *tibi*, and *sibi*, it is common.

V. *O* final is common ; as, *Vergo*, *amo*, *quando*.

Exceptions. Monosyllables, and the dative and ablative of the second declension, are long ; as, *Dō*, *regnō*.

VI. *U* final is long ; as, *Vultū*.

VII. *Y* final is short ; as, *Molj*.

VIII. *B*, *D*, *L*, *R*, and *T*, final, when preceded by a vowel, and not followed by a word beginning with a consonant, are short ; as, *Ab*, *apud*, *semel*, *precor*, *caput*.

IX. *C* and *N* final are long ; as, *Ac*, *non*.

X. *AS*, *ES*, and *OS*, final, are long ; as, *Mās*, *quies*, *bonōs*.

XI. *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, final, are short ; as, *Turris*, *legimūs*, *Capj̄s*.

Exceptions. Plural cases in *is* and *us*, are long ; as, *Pennis fructūs* ; also the sing. gen. of the fourth declension, as *fructūs*.

RULE ON DERIVATIVES.

Derivatives follow the quantity of their *primitives* ; thus, from *āmo* comes *āmicus* : from *dēcus*, --ōris, comes *dēcōro*.

RULE-ON COMPOUNDS.

Compounds follow the quantity of their *simples*; as, *Ērudio*, compounded of *ē* and *rūdis*.

Recapitulation.

What does prosody signify? What does quantity signify? How does quantity regard syllables? To what do long and short syllables in Latin prosody correspond? What exceptions are there? Give examples. How are long and short syllables distinguished in prosody? What is a common syllable? Mention an example. What is an arbitrary syllable? Mention an example.

What is the quantity of diphthongs?—of one vowel before another?—of a contracted syllable?—of a vowel before two consonants? Is it required that the two consonants, or the double consonant, be always in the same word with the vowel? When is a vowel long by position? Mention the double consonants. What is the quantity of a vowel before a mute and a liquid? What are mutes? Name them. What are liquids? Name them.

What is the quantity of the first syllable of preterites and supines of two syllables? What is the quantity of the first two syllables of preterites which double the first syllable? When is a substantive said to increase? What is the quantity of the crement, or increase of substantives of the third declension?—of substantives of the plur. num.? When is a verb said to increase? What is the quantity of the crement of verbs?

What is the quantity of *a* final? What exception? What is the quantity of *e* final? What exception? What is the quantity of *i* final? What exception? What is the quantity of *o* final? What exception? What is the quantity of *u* final?—of *y* final?—of *b*, *d*, *l*, *r*, and *t*, when preceded by a vowel?—of final *c* and *n*?—of *as*, *es*, and *os*, final?—of *is*, *us*, and *ys*, final? What exception? What is the quantity of derivatives?—of compounds?

Give the rule for the quantity of those letters and syllables which, in the following words, are designated by Italics.

Alius, *Gaza*, *Vestris*, *Eubæa*, *Omneis*, *Vidi*, (verb,) *Casum*, (supine,) *Vici*, (verb,) *Motum*, (supine,) *Didici*, (verb,) *Tutudi*, (verb,) *Colorem*, *Ætatem*, *Pennarum*, *Generorum*, *Fructus*.

tibus, Amarem, Habebam, Legitis, Regina, Domino, Agri, Cornu, Simul, Ardor, Tulit, Halec, Sindon, Musas, Sermones, Generos, Civis, Corpus.

CHAPTER II.—PROSODIAL FIGURES.

Explan. The word *figure* signifies *form*, and, in grammar, it is used to signify a form of expression, the *form* of a word, or the form of a syllable. In prosody, it is used in the last-mentioned acceptation, and designates those changes which syllables undergo, so as to become adapted to poetical measure.

OBSERV. The following are the principal figures :

I. *Synalæ'pha*, or the cutting off of a vowel or a diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel ; as, *Conticuer'()* omnes, for *conticuere omnes*.

II. *Ecthlip'sis*, or the cutting off of *m* final, when preceded by a vowel, and followed by a word beginning with a vowel ; as, *Quant'()* est, for *quantum est*.

III. *Synæ'r'esis*, or *Crä'sis*—the uniting of two syllables, so as to form one ; thus, *Phæ'thon*, for *Phä'ethon*.

IV. *Dia'r'esis*, or the dividing of one syllable into two ; thus, *Äq'uæ*, for *ä'quæ*.

V. *Systole*,—the shortening of a long syllable ; as, *Tulæ-runt*, for *tulêrunt*.

VI. *Diastole*,—the lengthening of a long syllable ; as, *Ä-môr*, for *amôr*.

RULE. *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipsis* always take place when letters are situated as mentioned in the definitions of those figures : the other figures are used occasionally, at the pleasure of the poet.

Recap. What does the word *figure* signify ? How is it used in prosody ? Define and exemplify *synalæpha*,—*ecthlipsis*,—*synæresis*,—*diæresis*,—*systole*,—*diastole*. When do *synalæpha* and *ecthlipsis* take place ? When are the other figures used ?

CHAPTER III.—FEET, OR MEASURE.

Explan. By feet or measure, is meant the number of syllables which are grouped, or thrown together, by the rhythm, (flowing sound,) of the verse. The word *feet* is used in allusion to the voice, walking, as it were, along the verse,—the measured sound of the verse, resembling the regular movement of the feet in walking. The word *measure* implies that a certain number of syllables serves as a *measure*, for ascertaining the *length* of the verse.

OBSERV. The poetical feet which occur most frequently, are the *Spondee* and the *Dactyl*.

DEFIN. I. The *spondee* consists of *two long syllables*; as, *Ōm̄nēs* :

II. The *dactyl* of *one long and two short*; as, *Scribēre*.

Note. A syllable which, after the completion of a foot, remains at the end of a word, or forms the first syllable of the succeeding foot, is called a *Cæsura*; and its quantity is always *long*.

Examples.

Cārmīn|būs vī|vēs| tēpūs ln| ōmnē mē|is.

Quādrūpē|dāntē pū|trēm sōn|tū, &c.

Explan. The word *cæsura* comes from the supine of the verb *cædo*, (cut,) and is applied to final syllables situated as above mentioned, because they usually *cut*, or divide the verse into rhythmical portions.

Recap. What is meant by feet, or measure? How is the word *feet* used? What does the word *measure* imply? What are the poetical feet which occur most frequently? Of what does the spondee consist? Give an example. Of what does the dactyl consist? Give an example. What do you call a syllable which remains at the end of a word, after the completion of a foot? What is its quantity? Mention examples. What does the word *cæsura* come from, and how is it applied?

CHAPTER IV.—VERSE.

Explan. The word *verse* is derived from the Latin verb *verto*, (turn,) and is used to designate as many feet as constitute a *line* in poetry; because, at the end of every line, we turn, as it were, and resume the rhythm.

OBSERV. I. The kind of verse which was most in use among Latin poets, is called *Hexam'eter*.

Explan. The word *hexameter* is derived from a compound Greek word signifying *six measures*.

DEFIN. Hexameter verse contains six feet, or measures, consisting of a variable arrangement of the dactyl and the spondee, for the *first four*; a dactyl for the *fifth*; and a spondee for the *sixth*; thus,

Lūdērē, quē vēr|lēm cālā|mō pēr|misit ā|grēstī.
Infān|dūm rē|ginā jū|bēs rēnō|vārē dō|lōrēm.

Exception. Sometimes, though rarely, a *spondee* is found in the *fifth* place; and the verse is then called *spondaic*; thus,

Cārā dē|ūm sōbō|lēs māg|nūm Jōvīs|incrē|mētūm.

OBSERV. II. Another species of verse which was much used by the Roman poets, is called *Pentameter*: i. e. verse of *five measures*, or feet.

DEFIN. Pentameter verse is usually divided into *hemistichs*, or half verses. The first hemistich contains two feet; both spondees, or both dactyls, or one a dactyl and the other a spondee; and a *cæsura*:—the second hemistich contains two dactyls and a *cæsura*; thus,

Nātūrā sēqu|tūr| sēmīna| quisquē sū|ā.
Cārmīn|hūs vī|vēs| tēpūs in| ōmnē mē|is.

Note. This species of verse was commonly used in alternate lines with hexameter, and the couplets, (couplets of lines,) which were thus formed, were called *Elegiac verse*; because this kind of poetry was originally appropriated to *elegies*, and pathetic subjects. The subjoined exercise in scanning, shows the form of the elegiac couplet.

Note. The dividing of a verse into its constituent feet, is called *scanning*.

Explan. The word *scan* comes from the Latin verb *scando*, (climb,) and is used in allusion to the voice ascending, or moving along, the verse, by means of the feet.

Recap. What is the word *verse* derived from? How is it used? Why? What kind of verse was most in use among Latin poets? What is the word *hexameter* derived from? Define *hexameter* verse. Give examples. Scan them. When a verse contains a spondee in the fifth place, what is it called? Mention another species of verse which was much used by the Roman poets. What is the word *pentameter* derived from? How may pentameter verse be divided? What does the first contain?—the second? Mention examples. How was this species of verse commonly used? What name was given to the couplets thus formed? Why? What is scanning? What does the word *scan* come from? How is it used?

Scan the following lines; and prove the scanning, by applying the rules of quantity to every syllable.

Excipiunt plausu pavidos gaudetque tuentes.

Ipse mea posui mæstus in igne manu.

Extremus formæque ante omnes pulcher Iulus.

Imposui rapidis viscera nostra rogis.

Postquam omnem læti consessum oculosque suorum,

Pluribus exemplis scripta fuisse reor.

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.

Nesciat his summam si quis abesse manum.

Impulit agnosco veteris vestigia flammæ.

Defuit et scriptis ultima lima meis.

Poscamus ventos atque hæc me sacra quotannis.

In populi quidquam si tamen ore mei est.

[As prosody occupies so little space, a separate recapitulation of this part of grammar is not necessary.]

SYNOPSIS OF GRAMMAR.

Of how many parts does grammar consist? Define these parts. [The more important questions contained in the recapitulation of every part should now be prescribed in successive lessons. The selection of the questions may be made in the following way: Let the pupil mark with a pencil every question which the teacher thinks proper to select. This direction is applicable to Orthography and Prosody. The closing recapitulation of Etymology and Syntax, will furnish the more important questions on these parts. See p. 227, &c.]

APPENDIX.

ANOMALIES IN ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.



PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

CHAP. I.—SUBSTANTIVES.

Explan. THE word *anomaly* signifies irregularity, and is applied in grammar, to those words and constructions, (forms of expression,) which are irregular, or, in other words, do not conform to the rules of inflection or of syntax.

OBSERV. Irregular substantives may be arranged in *four* classes.

1st. Substantives which deviate from the rules on *gender*, *root*, or *termination*; as, *Cor*, --*dis*, (heart,) *neuter*. [The learner will find, by referring to the third declension, that Rule I. on *gender* requires substantives which terminate in *or*, in the sing. nom., to be of the *mas. gend.*; and that Rule II. on *root*, requires that such a substantive have, for its root, the word which forms the sing. nom., continued *without change*, through all the cases. But, contrary to these two rules, we find that *cor* is of the *neut. gend.*; and that it *adds* a letter to the sing. nom., before adopting it as the root of the oblique cases. *Cor*, therefore, is an exception to Rule I. on *gender*, and Rule II. on *root*, in the third declension.]

2d. Substantives which are *variable* in gender, or in declension; as, *Cœ'lum*, --*i*, (heaven,) *neut.* in the *sing.*; but --*i*, --*orum*, *mas.* in the *plur.* [Here we observe that the gender *varies* from *neut.* to *mas.*]

3d. Substantives which, from their being *deficient* in number or in case, are called *defective*; as, *Nē'fas*, (enormity,) *neut.*, which has *no plur.*, and is *indeclinable* in the *sing.*

4th. Substantives which, from their having more than one gender, and consequently more than one form of inflection, are called *redundant*; as, *Bal'teus*, --i, or --um, --i, (belt,) *masc.* or *neut.*, declined either like *dominus*, or like *regnum*.

[The pupil should be directed always to mention the class of every irregular substantive which he recites; and when the substantive is irregular in gender, root, or termination, the rule or rules from which it varies, should be mentioned and recited. (See *cor*, preceding page.)

After the first course of study in the Appendix, the following may be found a useful exercise. Let the irregular substantives be written off, in classes, as arranged in this and the preceding page; so as to select, and present by themselves, 1st, all the substantives which are irregular in gender, root, or termination: 2d, all that are variable, &c.—Substantives which are irregular in gender, &c., should be referred, in the following manner, to the rule or rules from which they deviate.

Cor, --dis, *n.*, heart. *Gend.*, Rule I.—*Root*, Rule II. It is unnecessary to mention the declension, as it is sufficiently indicated by the termination of the genitive. An exercise of this kind will be found a useful, and not unpleasant employment, for an hour a-day, till the appendix is exhausted.—Pupils that are very young, may have their first course of the appendix restricted to the words which occur in the parsing lessons. The second course should consist of short successive portions, committed daily to memory, in the order of the appendix. A third course may be prescribed in the form of the written exercise which has been mentioned.

Learners will, in this way, obtain a knowledge of all that is contained in the copious exceptions of the original work, and will obtain it on a plan which, it is thought, will be found to combine thorough instruction, with ease to the pupil.]

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

[*Note* 1st. The following abbreviations are used in the vocabulary: *gend.*, for gender; *m.*, for masculine; *f.*, for feminine; *n.*, for neuter; *c.*, for common; *sing.*, for singular; *pl.*, for plural; *nom.*, for nominative; *g.*, for genitive; *d.*,

for dative; *ac.*, for accusative; *v.*, for vocative; *ab.*, for ablative; *pos.*, for positive; *comp.*, for comparative; *superl.*, for superlative; and the usual contractions for the parts of verbs; thus, *act. indic. pres., sing. num., first pers.*

2d. In the English of the substantives, and of the verbs, no article and no preposition are used; as the sense of the passage in which a word is used, must always decide whether a particle should be used, and what particle is appropriate to the connection.]

A.

Ā'bīes, --ētis, <i>f.</i> , fir-tree.	Ēnē'is, --īdos, <i>ac.</i> , --īda, <i>f.</i> , E-neid.
Abys'sus, --i, <i>f.</i> , abyss.	Æ'quor, --is, <i>n.</i> , sea, plain.
Accip'iter, --ris, <i>m.</i> , hawk.	Ā'er, --is, <i>ac.</i> , --a, <i>m.</i> , air.
Ac'cola, --æ, <i>c.</i> , oftener <i>m.</i> , neighbor.	Æsti'va, --orum, <i>sing. not used</i> , <i>n.</i> , summer quarters.
A'cer, --is, <i>n.</i> , the maple tree.	Æ'ther, --is, <i>ac.</i> , --em, oftener --a, <i>m.</i> , ether.
Ac'héron, --tis, <i>m.</i> , Acheron.	Æ'thiops, --is, <i>c.</i> , Ethiopian.
Achil'les, --is, <i>m.</i> , Achilles.	Aff'i'nis, --is, <i>c.</i> , relation by marriage.
Acin'āces, --is, <i>m.</i> , scimitar.	Agric'ola, --æ, <i>c.</i> , oftener <i>m.</i> , cultivator, husbandman.
Ac'inum, --i, <i>n.</i> , } grape-stone.	Al'bion, --i, <i>n.</i> , Britain.
—us, --i, <i>m.</i> , }	Album, --i, <i>pl. not used</i> , <i>n.</i> , list.
Acta, --orum, <i>n.</i> , no <i>sing.</i> , acts.	A'les, --itis, <i>c.</i> , oftener <i>m.</i> , bird.
A'cus, --us, <i>pl. d. and ab.</i> , --u-bus, <i>f.</i> , needle.	Alpes, --ium, no <i>sing.</i> , <i>f.</i> , Alps.
Ad'amas, --antis, <i>m.</i> , adamant.	Al'vear, --is, } <i>n.</i> , bee-hive.
Adoles'cens, --tis, <i>c.</i> , young person.	— --e, --is, }
A'dor, --is, <i>n.</i> , fine wheat.	— --ium, --i, }
Ad'vena, --æ, <i>c.</i> , oftener <i>m.</i> , stranger.	Alvus, --i, <i>f.</i> , belly.
A'edon, --is, <i>f.</i> , nightingale.	Amar'acum, --i, <i>n.</i> , } sweet
Æ'gis, --īdis, or --īdos, <i>ac.</i> , --i-dem, or --īda, <i>f.</i> , egis.	—us, --i, <i>m.</i> , } marjoram.
Ægyptus, --i, <i>f.</i> , Egypt.	Ambā'ge, (ab. only <i>sing. case used</i>), <i>pl.</i> , --es, &c. through-out, <i>f.</i> , circumlocution.
Ēnē'as, --æ, <i>ac.</i> , --am or --an, <i>v.</i> , --a, * <i>m.</i> , Eneas.	A'mes, --itis, <i>m.</i> , fowler's staff.
	Améthys'tus, --i, <i>f.</i> , amethyst.
	Amnis, --is, <i>c.</i> , river.
	Amus'sis, --is, <i>ac.</i> , --im, <i>f.</i> , misson's rule.

* All proper names which end in --as, in the *sing. nom.*, and are of the first declension, are declined in the same way.

A		A	
Anch'ises, --æ, ac., --em, v., --e,	ab., --e,* m., Anchises.	Arcus, --us, pl. d. and ab., --u-	bus, m., bow.
Anc'ile, --is, }	n., shield.	Argo, --us, f., Argo.	
—um, --i, }		Argos, --eos, d., --ei, n., }	Ar-
Androg'æos, --i, }	m., Andro-	pl., Argi, --orum, m., }	gos.
—o, --nis, }	geos.	Argūtīæ, --arum, f., no sing.,	quirks.
Angipōrtum, --i, n., }	lane.	Ar'ies, --ētis, m., ram.	
—us, --us, m., }		Arma, --orum, n., no sing.,	arms.
Anguis, --is, ab., --e or --i, c.,	snake.	Artoc'ræas, --ātis, n., pie.	
Angust'ia, --orum, n., no sing.,	straits, defile.	Artus, --us, pl. d. and ab., --u-	bus, m., joint.
An'ima, --æ, pl. d. and ab., --a-	bus, f., soul.	Arun'do, --inis, f., reed.	
An'io, --ēnis, f., Anio.		As, --sis, m., pound, shilling.	
Annus, --i, f., year.		As'secla, --æ, c., oftener m.,	attendant.
Antidōtus, --i, f., antidote.		Aspis, --idis, f., asp.	
Antis'tes, --itis, c., prelate.		Astu, (nom. and ac. only cases	used,) n., city.
Aplust're, --is, }	n., flag.	Atho, --nis, }	m., Athos.
—um, --i, }		—os, --i, }	
Aphractum, --i, n., }	open	At'omus, --i, c., atom.	
—us, --i, m., }	ship.	Atys, --yos, ac., --ym or --yn,	ab., --ye or --y, m., Atys.
Ap'ina, --arum, f., no sing.,	gewgaws.	Au'ceps, --upis, c., fowler.	
Apōllināres, --ium, f., no sing.,	games in honor of Apollo.	Auctor, --is, c., author.	
Apollo, --inis, m., Apollo.		Augur, --is, c., augur.	
Apr'ilis, --is, m., April.		Aver'nus, --i, m., }	Aver-
Aquā'lis, --is, m., ewer.		pl., --a, --orum, n., }	nus.
Arbor, }		A'vis, --is, ab., --e or --i, f., bird.	
—os, }	--ōris, f., tree.	Ax'is, --is, m., axle.	
Arcas, --adis or --ados, ac., --a-	dem or --ada, m., Arcadian.		
Arctos, }			
—us, }	--i, f., bear.		
B.		B.	
		Bac'ulum, --i, n., }	staff.
		—us, --i, m., }	
		Balānus, --i, c., fruit of the	palm-tree.
		Bal'nēum, --i, }	
		pl., --a, --orum, }	n., }
		— --æ, --arum, f., }	bath.

* All Greek proper names which end in --es, in the sing. nom., and are of the first declension, are declined in this way.

B

- Balteum**, --i, n., } belt.
 —us, --i, m., }
Barbitus, --i, c., harp.
Bātīlūm, --i, n., } fire-shovel.
 —us, --i, m., }
Bellāria, --orum, n., no sing.,
 sweetmeats.
Bes, --sis, m., two thirds.
Bib'lus, --i, f., Egyptian reed.
Bībrax, --actis, f., Bibrax.
Bona, --orum, n., no sing.,
 goods.
Bōrēas, --æ, ac., --am or --an.,
 m., Boreas.
Bos, --ois, or --ovis, pl. g., --o-
 um, d. and ab., --obus or --u-
 bus, c., ox, cow.
Brac'cæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 breeches.
Bran'chlæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 gills.
Brēvia, --ium, n., sing. not u-
 sed, shelves.
Bū'cēras, --ātis, or --ātos, n.,
 kind of herb.
Būris, --is, ac., --im, f., beam
 of a plough.
Byssus, --i, f., fine flax, linen.

C

- Cācōēthes**, --is, n., evil habit.
Cādāver, --is, n., carcase.
Cæsar, --is, m., pl. sometimes
 used, Caesar.
Cālīx, --icis, m., cup.
Callis, --is, m., path.
Cāl'yx, --icis, m., calyx.
Camēlus, --i, c., camel.
Canālīs, --is, c., conduit-pipe.
Cancel'li, --orum, m., no sing.,
 lattices.

C

- Canī**, --orum, m., no sing., grey
 hairs.
Canis, --is, c., dog.
Can'nābis, --is, ac., --im, f., hemp.
Can'thāris, --idis, or --idos, ac.,
 --idem or --ida, f., cup.
Cā'pis, --idis or --idos, ac., --i-
 dem or --idu, f., cup.
Capo, --nis, } m., capon.
 —us, --i, }
Cap'ulum, --i, n., } hilt.
 —us, --i, m., }
Cā'pys, --yis or --yos, m., Cāpyā.
Carbā'sus, --i, f., } sail.
 pl., --a, --orum, n., }
Caro, --nis, f., flesh.
Casse, (ab. only case used,) m.,
 with a net.
Cassis, --idis or --idos, ac., --i-
 dem or --ida, f., helmet.
Castra, --orum, n., no sing.,
 camp.
Caulis, --is, m., stalk.
Cenchris, --is, m., kind of ser-
 pent.
Centaurus, --i, f., (when used
 as the name of a ship.)
Cepa, --æ, f., } onion.
 —e, --i, n., indecl., }
Ceres, --ēris, f., Ceres.
Cespis, --itis, m., turf.
Cete, indecl., n., whales.
Chālybs, --is, m., steel.
Chamē'leon, --is or --tis, m., ca-
 meleon.
Chā'os, g. not used, d., --o, n.,
 chaos.
Chāristia, --orum, n., no sing.,
 peace-feasts.
Char'ites, --um, f., no sing., the
 Graces.

e

C

Châron, --tis, *m.*, Charon.
 Chelys, --yis or yos, *f.*, harp.
 Chlâmys, --ydis or --ydos, *ac.*,
 --ydem or --yda, *f.*, mantle.
 Chrysolithus, --i, *f.*, chrysolite.
 Chrysoprâsus, --i, *f.*, chrysopra-
 sus.
 Cibâria, --orum, *n.*, *no sing.*,
 food.
 Cicer, --is, *m.*, vetch.
 Cinis, --eris, *c.*, ashes.
 Civis, --is, *c.*, citizen.
 Classis, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *c.*,
 fleet.
 Clavis, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im,
f., key.
 Clens, --tis, *c.*, client.
 Clypeum, --i, *n.*, } shield.
 —us, --i, *m.*, }
 Cœlebs, --is, *c.*, unmarried
 person.
 Cœlicola, --æ, *pl. g. contract-*
ed., --um, *c.*, inhabitant of
 heaven.
 Cælum, --i, *n.*, } heaven.
 pl., --i, --orum, *m.*, }
 Cohors, --tis, *pl. g.*; --ium, *f.*,
 cohort.
 Collis, --is, *m.*, hill.
 Colluvies, --ei, }
 —o, --nis, } *f.*, dirt.
 Colus, --i, *c.*, distaff.
 Comes, --itis, *c.*, companion.
 Comêta, --æ, *m.*, comet.
 Comitæa, --orum, *n.*, *no sing.*,
 assembly.
 Compâges, --um, }
 —o, --inis, } *f.*, joining.
 Compède, (*ab. only sing. case*
used.) *pl.*, --es, --um, &c.,
 throughout, *f.*, fetter.

Conger, --ri, }
 —rus, --ri, } *m.*, eel.
 Conjux, --gis, *c.*, spouse.
 Consul, --is, *m.*, consul.
 Convîva, --æ, *c.*, guest.
 Cor, --dis, *n.*, heart.
 Cœrax, --cis, *m.*, raven.
 Corbis, --is, *c.*, basket.
 Corinthus, --i, *f.*, Corinth.
 Cortex, --icis, *m. or f.*, bark.
 Cos, --otis, *pl. g.*, --ium, whet-
 stone.
 Costus, --i, *f.*, costmary.
 Cras, *n.*, *indeclinable*, to-mor-
 row.
 Crépundia, --orum, *n.*, *no sing.*,
 toys.
 Cres, --etis, *m.*, Cretan.
 Crēnis, --is, *m.*, hair.
 Crōcum, --i, *n.*, }
 —us, --i, *f.*, } crocus.
 Crus, --uris, *n.*, leg.
 Cūbitis, --is, *f.*, }
 —um, --i, *n.*, } cubit.
 Cūcumis, --is, or --eris, *f.*, cu-
 cumber.
 Cudo, --nis, *f.*, cap.
 Cūnabula, --orum, *n.*, *no sing.*,
 cradle.
 Cūnæ, --arum, *f.*, *no sing.*, cra-
 dle.
 Cuprdo, --inis, *f. in prose, but*
commonly m. in poetry, de-
 sire.
 Cupres'sus, --i, *c.*, cypress-tree.
 Cuspis, --idis, *f.*, point of a
 spear.
 Custos, --odis, *c.*, keeper.
 Cutis, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im, *f.*,
 skin.
 Cytisus, --i, *c.*, kind of shrub.

D.

- Dā'ma, --æ, m., deer.
 Dāpīs, (gen.) nom. and voc. not used, f., dish, feast.
 Dā'res, --is or --etis, m., Dares.
 Dē'a, --æ, pl. d. and ab., --abus, f., goddess.
 Decāmæ, --arum, f., no sing., tythes.
 Décus'sis, --is, m., a tenth.
 Delíc'um, --i, n., pl., --æ, --arum, f., delight.
 Dē'los, --i, } sing. ac., --um or --us, --i, } --on, f., Delos.
 Delphin, --is, ac., --a, } m., dolphin.
 ———us, --i, } phin.
 Dens, --tis, m., tooth.
 Dē'us, --i, m., God or a god, sing. v., deus, pl. nom. & v., dei, pl. d. & ab., diis, more commonly than dei & deis, pl. g., sometimes contracted into deūm.
 Dē'unx, --cis, m., an eleventh.
 Dextans, --tis, m., a tenth.
 Dī'lectus, --i, f., dialect.
 Dī'am'ētros, --i, f., diameter.
 Dī'ca, (sing. n.,) ac., --am, pl. ac., --as, only cases used, f., process.
 Dī'cis, sing. g. only case used, form.
 Dictē'ria, --orum, n., no sing., jibes.
 Dīdo, --nis, } f., Dido.
 ———us, }
 Dies, --ei, m. or f. in the sing., always m. in the plur., day.
 Dī'tū'culum, --i, n., no pl., dawn.
 Dilū'vies, --ei, f., } deluge.
 ———um, --i, n., }

D

- Dīndŷmus, --i, m., } a hill in pl., --a, --orum, n., } Phrygia.
 Diphthong'us, --i, f., diphthong.
 Dī'ræ, --arum, f., no sing., furies.
 Dis, --itis, m., Plutus.
 Ditiō'nis, (sing. g.,) nom. & v. not used, f., power.
 Diu, (sing. ab. only case,) by day.
 Divit'ia, --arum, f., no sing., riches.
 Dod'rans, --tis, m., a ninth.
 Dō'mus, --us, or --i, dat., --ui or --o, ac., --um, v., --us, ab., --o, pl. n., --us, g., --orum or --uum, d., --ibus, ac., --os or --us, v., --us, ab., --ibus.
 Note. The sing. gen., when used in the form of domi, always signifies at home.
 Dos, --otis, pl. g., --ium, f., dowry.
 Drō'mas, --adis, m., dromedary.
 Drū'ides, --um, m., no sing., Druids.
 Dry'ades, --um, m., sing. seldom used, Dryads.
 Duum'vir, --i, m., one of two men.
 Dux, --cis, c., a leader.

E.

- E'bur, --oris, n., ivory.
 Echo, --us, d., --o, f., echo.
 Elégē'ia, --æ, f., } elegy.
 ———us, --i, m., }
 El'ephas, --antis, } m., elephant.
 ———antus, --i, }

E

F

E'tis, --idis or --ides, *ac.*, --i-
dem or --ida, --im or --in, *f.*,
Elis.

Elys'ium, --i, *n.*, } Elys-
pl., --i, --orum, *m.*, } ium.

Ensis, --is, *m.*, sword.

E'os, --ois, *f.*, morning.

Ephem'eris, --idis, *f.*, day-
book.

Epigram'ma, --tis, *pl. g.*, --um
or --on, *n.*, epigram.

Epos, (*sing. n.* and *ac.*, only
cases used,) *n.*, epic poetry.

Epul'um, --i, *n.*, } ban-
pl., --æ, --arum, *f.*, } quet.

E'qua, --æ, *pl. d. & ab.*, --abus,
f., mare.

E'ques, --itis, *m.*, horseman.

Erē'mus, --i, *f.*, desert.

Es'sēda, --æ, *f.*, } chariot.
—um, --i, *n.*, }

Eventus, --us, *m.*, } event.
—um, --i, *n.*, }

Excū'blæ, --arum, *f.*, no *sing.*,
watches.

Exsē'quæ, --arum, *f.*, no *sing.*,
funerals.

Extā, --orum, *n.*, no *sing.*, en-
trails.

Exul, --is, *c.*, oftener *m.*, an
exile.

Exū'viæ, --arum, *f.*, no *sing.*,
spoils.

F

Fācētīæ, --arum, *f.*, no *sing.*,
pleasantries.

Facultā'tes, --ium, *f.*, no *sing.*,
chattels.

Fan'tex, --icis, *m.*, mower.

Fā'ma, --æ, *f.*, no *pl.*, report.

Fāmil'æ, --æ or --as, *f.*, fam-
ily.

Fam'ula, --æ, *pl. d.* and *ab.*,
--abus, *f.*, female servant.

Far, --ris, *ab.*, --e, *pl. g.*, *d.*,
and *ab.*, not used, *n.*, corn.

Fas, indecl., *n.*, justice.

Fasces, --ium, *m.*, no *sing.*, fas-
ces.

Fascis, --is, *m.*, bundle.

Fasti, --orum, } *m.*, no *sing.*,
—us, --uum, } calendars.

Fauz, --cis, *pl. g.*, --ium, *f.*,
jaw.

Faz, --cis, *pl. g.* not used, fire-
brand.

Fēbris, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im,
f., fever.

Feb'rūa, --orum, *n.*, no *sing.*,
purifying sacrifices.

Fectā'lis, --is, *m.*, herald.

Fem'nis, (*sing. g.*) *d.*, --i, *ab.*,
--e, only *sing. cases used*; *pl.*
nom., *ac.*, and *voc.*, --a, only
pl. cases used, *n.*, thigh.

Fēm'ur, --oris, *n.*, thigh.

Fē'riæ, --arum, *f.*, no *sing.*,
holidays.

Fī'cus, --us, } *f.*, fig.
—i, }

Fil'ia, --æ, *pl. d. & ab.*, --abus,
f., daughter.

Fil'ius, --i, *sing. voc.*, --i, *m.*,
son.

Fī'nis, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *c.*,
end; but *pl.*, --es, --um, &c.,
m., boundaries.

Flā'bra, --orum, *n.*, no *sing.*,
blasts, gusts.

Fol'is, --is, *m.*, bellows,

Fō'mes, --itis, *m.*, fuel,

F G

Fons, --tis, *m.*, fountain.
 Fōres, --um, *f.*, *sing.* seldom used, doors.
 Fōri, --orum, *no sing.*, *m.*, seats, hatches, hives.
 Fornix, --icis, *m.*, vault.
 Frænum, --i, } *n.*, }
 pl. --a, --orum, } *m.*, } bridle.
 „ --i, „ }
 Frāga, --orum, *n.*, *no sing.*, strawberries.
 Frāter, --ris, *m.*, brother.
 Fru'gis, (*sing. gen.*) *nom.* & *v.*, not used; *pl.*, --es, --um, &c., throughout, *f.*, corn.
 Fulgētra, --æ, *f.*, }
 —um, --i, *n.*, } lightning.
 Fūnis, --is, *m.*, rope.
 Fur, --uris, *c.*, oftener *m.*, thief.
 Furfur, --uris, *m.*, bran.
 Furfures, --um, *m.*, *no sing.*, scales.
 Fustis, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *m.*, staff, club.

G.

Gā'des, --ium, *f.*, *no sing.*, Cadiz.
 Gens, --tis, *pl. g.*, --ium, *f.*, nation.
 Genu, --u, *pl. d. & ab.*, --ubus or --ibus, *n.*, knee.
 Geomētra, --æ, *m.*, geometrician.
 Georg'ica, --ōn, instead of --orum, *n.*, Georgics.
 Gerræ, --arum, *f.*, *no sing.*, trifles.
 Gibbus, --i, } *m.*, }
 —er, --i, } swelling.
 —a, --æ, *f.*, }
 —er, --eris, *n.*, }

G H

Gi'gas, --antis, *m.*, giant.
 Glis, --iris, *pl. g.*, --ium, *m.*, rat.
 Glos, --oris, *f.*, sister-in-law.
 Glūten, --inis, } *n.*, glue.
 —inum, --i, }
 Grātes, *pl. nom. and ac.*, only cases, *f.*, thanks.
 Grex, --egis, *c.*, flock.
 Gros'sus, --i, *c.*, green fig.
 Grus, --uis, *c.*, crane.
 Gryps, --his, *m.*, griffin.
 Gummis, --is, *ac.*, --im, *f.*, }
 —i, indecl., *n.*, } gum.
 Gorges, --itis, *m.*, whirlpool.

H.

Had'rias, --æ, *m.*, the Adriatic.
 Hæres, --ēdis, *c.*, hair.
 Hæresis, --is, --eos or --ios, *f.*, heresy.
 Hal'cyon, --is, *f.*, halcyon.
 Halo, --nis, *f.*, halo.
 Harpāgo, --inis, *f.*, drag.
 Heb'doma, --æ, } *f.*, week.
 —as, --adis, }
 Hēpar, --ātis, or --ātos, *ab.*, --ate, *n.*, liver.
 Hēros, --ois, *pl. ac.*, --oas, *m.*, hero.
 Hes'perus, --i, *m.*, *no pl.*, evening star.
 Hrems, --is, *pl. g.*, *d.*, & *ab.*, not used, *f.*, winter.
 Hīerōsol'yma, --æ, *f.*, }
 —orum, *n.*, } Je-
 rusalem.
 Hīlum, --i, *n.*, *no pl.*, trifle.
 Hippomānes, indecl., *n.*, a kind of poison.
 Hir, indecl., *n.*, palm of the hand.

H I

Homo, --inis, c., man.
 Hospes, --itis, c., guest.
 Hostis, --is, c., enemy.
 Hūmus, --i, f., *no pl.*, ground.
 Hyādes, --um, f., *no sing.*, the seven stars.
 Hyberna, --orum, n., *no sing.*, winter-quarters.
 Hy'drops, --is, m., dropsy.
 Hy'laz, --ctis, f., name of a dog.
 Hyssopus, --i, f., hyssop.
 Hystrix, --icis, c., porcupine.

I.

I'con, --is, f., image.
 I'dus, --uum, f.; *no sing.*, ides, (a day of the month.)
 Ignis, --is, m., fire.
 Il'ia, --ium, n., *no sing.*, bowels.
 Il'ias, --ados, f., Iliad.
 Imāgo, --inis, f., image.
 Imber, --ris, ab., --re or --ri, m., shower.
 Imbrex, --icis, m. or f., gutter.
 Impētia, (g.) ab., --e, *only cases used*, m., force.
 Impūber, --is, } c., not mar-
 ———es, --is, } riageable.
 In'cita, or --as, (pl. ac.) *only case used*, n. or f., straits.
 Incunabūla, --orum, n., *no sing.*, cradle.
 Incus, --udis, f., anvil.
 Indiges, --itis, m., a man deified.
 Inducia, --arum, f. *no sing.*, truce.
 Indūviā, --arum, f., *no sing.*, clothes.
 Infans, --tis, c., infant.
 In'feri, --orum, m., *no sing.*, infernal gods.

I K

In'feriæ, (pl. nom.) ac., --as, *only cases used*, sacrifices for the dead.
 In'fic'ias, (pl. ac.) *only case used*, f., denial.
 Ingrā'tis, (pl. ab.) *only case*, f., in spite of.
 Injus'su, (sing. ab.) *only case*, without command.
 Insec'ta, --orum, n., *no sing.*, insects.
 Insid'ia, --arum, f., *no sing.*, snares.
 Instar, n., *indecl.*, size, resemblance.
 Inter'cus, --utis, f., dropsy.
 Inter'diu, (sing. ab.) *only case*, by day.
 Inter'pres, --etis, c., interpreter.
 In'trita, --æ, f., } mortar, min-
 ———um, --i, n., } ced meat.
 Iris, --idis, v., --i, f., Iris, rainbow.
 Is'mārus, --i, m.; pl., --a, --ōrum, n., Ismarus.
 Iter, --in'ēris, n., journey.

K.

Kālen'dæ, --arum, f., *no sing.*, kalends, (first day of a month.)

L.

Lac, --tis, n., milk.
 Lactes, --ium, f., *no sing.*, smaller intestines.
 Lacus, --i, }
 ———us, pl. d. & } m., lake.
 ———ab., --ubus, }
 Lagōpus, --ōdis, f., a kind of bird, herb.

L

Lāmen'ta, --orum, *n.*, no sing., lamentations.
 Lampas, --adis or --ados, *ac.*, --adem or --ada, *pl. ac.*, --ades or --adas, *m.*, lamp.
 Lāom'edon, --tis, *m.*, Laomedon.
 Lapidī'næ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., stone quarries.
 Lapis, --idis, *m.*, stone.
 Lār'ix, --icis, *c.*, larch-tree.
 Lar, --is, *pl. g.*, --ium, *m.*, household-god.
 Lau'tiæ, --arum, *f.*, } no sing.,
 —a, --orum, *n.*, } presents for ambassadors.
 Lēbes, --ētis, *m.*, cauldron.
 Lem'ures, --um, *m.*, no sing., hobgoblins.
 Lēpus, --oris, *m.*, hare.
 Lēthum, --i, *n.*, no pl., death.
 Leucoc'hrysus, --i, *f.*, jacinth.
 Levir, --i, *m.*, brother-in-law.
 Lex, --egis, *f.*, law.
 Liberta, --æ, *pl. d. & ab.*, --abus, *f.*, freedwoman.
 Librā'ria, --æ, *f.*, } library.
 —um, --i, *n.*, }
 Līgo, --nis, *f.*, spade.
 Līmax, --ācis, *c.*, snail.
 Līmes, --itis, *m.*, limit.
 Linter, --ris, *m. or f.*, *pl. g.*, --ium, small boat.
 Lis, --itis, *pl. g.*, litium, strife.
 Lōcus, --i, *n.*, *pl.*, --i, --orum, *m.*, or --a, --orum, *n.*, place.
 Lōtus, --i, *c.*, lot-tree.
 Lū'es, --is, *f.*, no pl., plague.
 Lustra, --orum, *n.*, no sing., dens.
 Lūtum, --i, *n.*, no pl., clay.

L M

Luz, --cis, *f.*, no pl., light.
 Lynx, --cis, *c.*, ounce, (an animal.)

M.

Macē'ria, --æ, } *f.*, wall.
 —es, --ei, }
 Mæn'alus, --i, *m.*, } Mæn'as.
 —pl., --a, --orum, *n.*, } las.
 Māgā'lia, --ium, *n.*, no sing., cottages.
 Magnes, --ē'tis, *m.*, loadstone.
 Mā'ne, *n.*, indeclin., morning.
 Mānū'bīæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., spoils.
 Mā'nus, --us, *f.*, hand.
 Margo, --inis, *f.*, brink.
 Martyr, --is, *c.*, martyr.
 Mas, --aris, *pl. g.*, --ium, *m.*, male.
 Mas'sicus, --i, *m.*, } Massi-
 —pl., --a, --orum, *n.*, } cus.
 Mā'ter, --ris, *f.*, mother.
 Mel, --lis, *pl. g.*, *d.*, & *ab.*, not used, *n.*, honey.
 Mē'los, (*ac.*) *ab.*, --o, *pl. nom.*, and *ac.*, --e, only cases used, *n.*, strain, song.
 Mensis, --is, *m.*, month.
 Mēph'rtis, --is, *sing. ac.*, --im, *f.*, unwholesome air.
 Mercēs, --ēdis, *f.*, reward.
 Merges, --itis, *f.*, handful of corn.
 Merid'ies, --ei, *m.*, noon.
 Mērops, --is, *m.*, woodpecker.
 Metāmorphō'sis, --eos or --ios, *ac.*, --im or --in, *pl. g.*, --eōn, change.
 Mētus, --us, *pl. g.*, *d.*, & *ab.*, not used, *m.*, fear.

M N

- Miles, --itis, c., soldier.
 Milliāre, --is, } n., mile.
 ———ium, --i, }
 Mīnæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 threats.
 Mīnūtīæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 niceties.
 Mīnōres, --um, m., no sing.,
 posterity.
 Mōnīa, --ium, n., no sing.,
 walls.
 Monītum, --i, n., } admoni-
 ———us, --i, m., } tion.
 Mons, --tis, m., mountain.
 Mūgil, --is, } m., mullet.
 ———is, --is, }
 Mula, --æ, pl. d. & ab., --abus,
 f., she-mule.
 Mūlier, --is, f., woman.
 Mundus, --i, m., no pl., orna-
 ments of a woman.
 Mūrīa, --orum, n., no sing., of-
 fices.
 Mūrīnceps, --ipis, c., denizen.
 Mūrīa, --æ, } f., brine.
 ———is, --ci, }
 Mus, --uris, pl. g., --ium, n.,
 mouse.
 Muscus, --i, n., no pl., moss.

N.

- Nardūs, --i, f., spikenard.
 Nā'sum, --i, n., } n., nose.
 ———us, --i, m., }
 Nāta, --æ, pl. d. & ab., --abus,
 f., daughter.
 Nātā'les, --ium, n., no sing., pa-
 rentage.
 Nātu, sing. ab. only case, by
 birth.
 Nau'ci, (g.) ab., --o, only ca-
 ses used, n., trifle.

N O

- Nāvis, --is, æ., --em or --im,
 f., ship.
 Nēces'se, or --um, indeclin., n.,
 necessity.
 Nēcis, (g.) nom. and v. not
 used, f., slaughter, death.
 Nectar, --is, ab., --e, n., nectar.
 Nē'sas, n., indeclin., wrong,
 wickedness, enormity.
 Nēmo, --inis, c., nobody.
 Nēpenthe, --is, n., kill-grief.
 Nērio, --ēnis, f., Nerio.
 Nix, --ivis, pl. g., --ium, f.,
 snow.
 Noctu, (ab.) only case used,
 by night.
 Nōnæ, --arum, f., no sing., no-
 nes, (a day of the month.)
 Nūgæ, --arum, f., no sing., tri-
 fles.
 Nun'dīnæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 market.
 Nup'tīæ, --arum, f., no sing.,
 nuptial.

O.

- Ō'ber, --icis, m. or f., bolt, bar,
 barrier.
 Ōb'ses, --idis, c., hostage.
 Ōbsid'io, --nis, f., } blockade.
 ———um, --i, n., }
 Ōcciput, --itis, ab., --e or --i,
 n., forehead.
 Ōctō'ber, --ris, m., October.
 Œd'ipus, --i, } m., Œdipus.
 ———-odis, }
 Œstrum, --i, n., } gad-bee.
 ———us, --i, m., }
 Olympīa, --orum, n., no sing.,
 Olympic games.
 Op'era, --arum, m., no sing.,
 workmen.

O P

- Opifex, --icis, c., oftener m.,
workman, mechanic.
Ōpis, (g.,) nom. & v. not used,
f.; help; pl., wealth, power,
resources.
Orbis, --is, pl. g., --ium, m.,
circle, globe, world.
Ordo, --inis, f., order.
Or'gla, --orum, n., no sing., or-
gies.
Orpheus, --os, } m., Orpheus.
----- --i, }
Oryx, --icis, m., wild goat.
Os, --ris, pl. g. not used, n.,
mouth, face.
Os, --sis, pl. g., --ium, n., bone.
Ossa, --æ, ac., --am or --an, m.,
Ossa.
Os'trea, --æ, f., } oyster.
----- --i, n., }

P.

- Päliäria, --ium, n., no sing.,
dewlap.
Palmes, --itis, m., vine-branch.
Palus, --ūdis, f., pool.
Pan, --is, ac., --a, m., Pan.
Panäces, --is, n., all-heal.
Pangæ'us, --i, m., } Pan-
pl., --a, --orum, n., } gæus.
Panis, --is, m., bread.
Päpāver, --is, n., poppy.
Päpýrus, --i, f., Egyptian reed.
Päräpherna, --orum, n., no
sing., property of a wife.
Pärentä'lia, --orum, n., no sing.,
funeral rites of a parent.
Päries, --etis, m., wall.
Paris, --idis or --idos, ac., --i-
dem, --im, or --in, m., Paris,
(son of Priam.)

P

- Par'ticeps, --is, c., partaker.
Partus, --us, pl. d. & ab., --ubus,
m., birth.
Pascha, --æ, n., passover.
Passer, --is, epicene gender,*
sparrow.
Pä'ter, --ris, m., father.
Pätrü'e'lis, --is, c., cousin-ger-
man.
Pëcus, --udis, f., sheep.
Pë'des, --itis, m., footman, (sol-
dier of the infantry.)
Pel'ägus, --i, n., no pl., sea.
Pel'vis, --is, ac., --em or --im,
f., basin.
Pënel'ope, --es, d., --e, ac., --em,
v., --e, ab., --e, † f., Penelope.
Penum, --i, n., } provisions.
----- --us, --i, m., }
Penus, --i, c., store-house.
Pëplum, --i, n., } veil.
----- --us, --i, m., }
Perdix, --icis, c., partridge.
Pergämus, --i, f., } citadel
pl., --a, --orum, n., } of Troy.
Perim'ëtros, --i, f., circumfer-
ence.
Përl'odus, --i, f., period.
Peris'celis, --idis, f., garter.
Persis, --idis, f., Persia.
Pes, --edis, m., foot.

* The epicene gender is that
which, under a termination
otherwise peculiar to one gen-
der, represents both the mas.
and the fem.

† All proper names which
end in --e, and belong to the
first declension, are inflected
after the same manner.

P

Phá'ethon, --tis, *m.*, Phaethon.
Phal'éra, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
trappings.

Phásé'lus, --i, *c.*, boat.

Pharos, --i, } *f.*, Pharos.
—us, --i, }

Philtra, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
potions.

Phoeníx, --i'cis, *m.*, Phoenix.

Pí'per, --is, *n.*, pepper.

Piscis, --is, *m.*, fish.

Pistrína, --æ, *f.*, } bake-
—um, --i, *n.*, } house.

Plagæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
nets.

Plebs, --is, *f.*, no pl., common
people.

Plei'ades, --um, *f.*, no sing.,
Pleiads.

Poë'ta, --æ, *m.*, poet.

Pollex, --icis, *m.*, thumb.

Pomus, --i, *f.*, apple-tree.

Pondo, *n.*, indecl., pound.

Pons, --tis, *m.*, bridge.

Pontus, --i, *m.*, no pl., sea.

Pop'les, --itis, *m.*, ham, (of the
leg.)

Pórticus, --us, *f.*, gallery.

Pórtus, --us, pl. *d. & ab.*, --ubus
or --ibus, *m.*, port.

Pos'tis, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *m.*,
post, door.

Præcordia, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
midriff, bowels.

Prænest'e, --is, *ab.*, --e, *n.*, }
—es, --is, } *f.*, }

Præneste.

Præs, --ædis, *c.*, surety.

Præ'ses, --idis, *m.*, president.

Prætex'tum, --i, *n.*, } pretext.
—us, --i, *m.*, }

P Q

Præcis, (*g.*) *d.*, --i, *ac.*, --ém,
ab., --e, only sing. cases used;
pl., --es, --um, &c., through
out, *f.*, prayer.

Primitiæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
first fruits.

Princip'la, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
ground of a general's tent.

Probos'cis, --idis, *f.*, proboscis.

Procé'res, --um, *m.*, no sing.,
nobles.

Prométhéus, --i, } *m.*, Pro-
—os, } metheus.

Promptu, *ab.*, only case used,
in readiness.

Prómul'cis, --idis, *f.*, metheglin.

Pū'bes, --is, *f.*, no pl., youth.

Pubes, --is, } *c.*, a marriage-
—eris, } able person.

Pudor, --is, *f.*, shame, modesty.

Pūgil, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *m.*,
champion.

Pulvis, --eris, *m.*, dust.

Pumex, --icis, *m.* or *f.*, pum-
ice-stone.

Puppis, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im,
f., stern, ship.

Pus, --uris, *n.*, matter, (from a
sore.)

Pyr'āmis, --idis, *f.*, pyramid.

Pýthag'oras, --æ, *m.*, Pythago-
ras.

Pyth'la, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
games in honor of Apollo.

Pyxis, --idos, *f.*, box.

Q.

Qua'drans, --tis, *m.*, fourth.

Quadri'gæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
chariots drawn by four hors-
es abreast.

Q R

Quētes, --ētis, *f.*, rest.
 Quincunx, --cis, *m.*, a fifth.
 Quī'ris, --ī'tis, *pl. g.*, --ium, Roman.
 Quisquilæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., sweepings.

R.

Rā'pa, --æ, *f.*, } turnip.
 —um, --i, *n.*, }
 Rastrum, --i, }
 pl., --a, --orum, } *n.*, } har-
 & --i, ,, } *m.*, } row,
 Rā'vis, --is, *f.*, ac., --im, hoarse- } rake.
 ness.
 Rē'fex, --īcis, *m.*, vine-branch,
 cut off.
 Reliquæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 remains.
 Requētes, --ei, }
 — --ētis, } *f.*, rest.
 Restis, --is, ac., --em or --im,
 rope.
 Rex, --egis, *m.*, king.
 Rō'bur, --ōris, *n.*, strength.
 Rostra, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
 place of harangues.
 Rubus, --i, *c.*, bramble.
 Rudens, --tis, *m.* or *f.*, cable.
 Ruma, --æ, *f.*, }
 —en, --inis, *n.*, } cud.
 Rumex, --īcis, *m.*, sorrel.
 Rus, --uris, ab., --e or --i, *pl.*
g., *d.*, and ab., not used, *n.*,
 country.
 Rusca, --æ, *f.*, }
 —us, --i, *m.*, } brush.

S.

Sācerdos, --ōtis, *c.*, priest,
 priestess.

S

Sal, --is, ab., --e, *m.*, no *pl.*, salt.
 Salar, --is, *m.*, trout.
 Sal'ēbræ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 rough places.
 Sales, --um, *m.*, no sing., witty
 sayings.
 Sali'œæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 salt-pits.
 Salus, --ūtis, *f.*, no *pl.*, safety.
 Samnis, --itis, *pl. g.*, --ium, *c.*,
 Samnite.
 Samos, --i, *f.*, Samos.
 Sandyx, --īcis, *m.* or *f.*, purple.
 Sanguis, --inis, *m.*, blood.
 Sappi'rus, --i, *f.*, sapphire.
 Sātēlles, --ītis, *m.*, life-guard.
 Sātias, *g.* not used, *d.*, --ati,
 &c., *pl.* not used, *f.*, satiety.
 Scalæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., sca-
 ling-ladders.
 Scat'ēbræ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 spring (of water.)
 Scōpæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., be-
 som.
 Scrō'bis, --is, }
 —æ, --is, } *m.* or *f.*, ditch.
 Scrū'ta, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
 old clothes.
 Sēcū'ris, --is, ac., --em or --im,
f., ax.
 Seges, --ītis, *f.*, growing corn.
 Segmen, --inis, } *n.*, par-
 —tum, --ti, } ing.
 Sēmen'tis, --is, ac., --em or --im,
f., sowing (of seed.)
 Semis, --sis, *m.*, half.
 Sem'ivir, --i, *m.*, womanish
 man.
 Sēnec'tus, --ūtis, *f.*, old age.
 Sēnex, --is, } *c.*, aged per-
 — --īcis, } son.

S

Sentes, --ium, *m.*, no sing., thorns.
 Seps, --is, *m.*, kind of serpent.
 Septunx, --cis, *m.*, a seventh.
 Serpens, --tis, *c.*, serpent.
 Servitus, --utis, *f.*, slavery.
 Sextans, --tis, *m.*, a sixth.
 Sib'ulum, --i, *n.*, } hiss.
 —us, --i, *m.*, }
 Si'ler, --is, *n.*, osier.
 Si'lex, --icis, *m.* or *f.*, flint.
 Sināpes, --is, *ac.*, --im, *f.*, mus-
 —i, indecl., *n.*, } tard.
 Sindon, --is, *f.*, fine linen.
 Sīnum, --is, *n.*, } milk-pail.
 —us, --i, *m.*, }
 Sitis, --is, *ac.*, --im, thirst.
 Sītus, *g.* not used, *d.*, --ui, &c.,
pl. g., d., and ab., not used,
m., condition.
 Sodā'is, --is, *m.*, companion.
 Sol, --is, *m.*, sun.
 Sordis, (*g.*) *nom. & v.* not used,
f., filth.
 Sōror, --is, *f.*, sister.
 Spēcus, --us, *pl. d. & ab.*, --u-
 bus, *f.*, sometimes *m.*, cave,
 den.
 Spinther, --is, *n.*, clasp.
 Sponsā'ia, --ium, *n.*, no sing.,
 espousals.
 Spontis, (*g.*) *ab.* --e, only ca-
 ses, spontaneously.
 Statīva, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
 standing camp.
 Stīpes, --itis, *m.*, stake.
 Stirps, --is, *m.* or *f.*, root of a
 tree.
 Strāmen, --inis, }
 —tum, --ti, } *n.*, straw.

S T

Strig'ilis, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im,
f., horse-comb.
 Stuffmen, --inis, } *n.*, per-
 —tum, --ti, } fume.
 Sū'ber, --is, *n.*, cork-tree.
 Subscus, --udis, *f.*, dovetail.
 Suōvētauril'ia, --ium, *n.*, no
 sing., (a kind of sacrifice.)
 Supel'lex, --ectilis, *ab.*, --e or
 --i, *f.*, no *pl.*, furniture.
 Suppēt'la, (*pl. nom.*) *ac.*, --as,
 only cases used, *f.*, help.
 Sus, --ūris, *c.*, hog, sow.
 Synōdos, --i, }
 —us, --i, } *f.*, synod.
 Sŷrācūnē, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 Syracuse.
 Syrtis, --is, *ac.*, --im, *f.*, quick-
 sand.
 T.
 Tā'bes, --is, *f.*, no *pl.*, consump-
 tion.
 Tēn'arus, --i, *m.*, } Tēnā-
 pl., --a, --orum, *n.*, } rus.
 Tālā'ia, --ium, *n.*, no sing.,
 winged shoes.
 Talpa, --æ, *m.*, mole.
 Té'ges, --itis, *f.*, mat.
 Tellus, --ūris, *f.*, no *pl.*, land,
 the earth.
 Tendo, --inis, *f.*, tendon.
 Ten'ebræ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 darkness.
 Termes, --itis, *m.*, olive-branch.
 Tesqua, --orum, *n.*, no sing.,
 rough places.
 Testis, --is, *c.*, witness.
 Tēthys, --yis or --yos, *ac.*, --ym
 or --yn, *f.*, Thetis.
 Thermæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing.,
 hot baths.

T

Thermop'ylæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., Thermopylæ.
 Thê'seus, --os, } *m.*, Theseus.
 -----i, }
 Thô'raz, --â'cis, *m.*, breast-plate.
 Thos, --ois, *m.*, (a kind of wolf.)
 Thus, --uris, *pl. g., d., & ab.*, not used, *n.*, frankincense.
 Tlâ'ra, } *ac.*, --am or --an, *f.*,
 -----as, } turban.
 Tib'êris, --is, *ac.*, --im, the Tiber.
 Tignum, --i, *n.*, } plank.
 -----us, --i, *m.*, }
 Tigris, --is or --idis, *ab.*, --ê or --i, *f.*, tiger.
 Tiryns, --this, *f.*, Tiryns.
 Topâ'zîus, --i, *f.*, topaz.
 Tô'ral, --is, } *n.*, bed-cover.
 -----e, --is, }
 Tor'cular, --is, } *n.*, wine-press.
 -----e, --is, }
 Torquis, --is, *c.*, chain.
 Trâ'chys, --y'nis or --y'nos, *f.*, Trachys.
 Trâ'duz, --ucis, *m.* or *f.*, graff.
 Trâ'mœ, --itis, *m.*, path.
 Transtra, --orum, *n.*, no sing., benches for rowers.
 Tri'bus, --us, *pl. d. & ab.*, --ubus, *f.*, tribe.
 Tri'cæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., toys.
 Trî'ens, --tis, *m.*, a third.
 Tri'pus, --odis, *m.*, tripod.
 Trium'vir, --i, *m.*, one of three men, triumvir.
 Trô'as, --âdis, *pl. d. & ab.*, --asî or --asîn, *f.*, female Trojan.
 Tros, --ois, *ac.*, --em or --a, *pl. ac.*, --as, *m.*, Trojan.

T U

Tâ'ber, --is, *n.*, swelling.
 Tû'ber, --is, *f.*, tuber-tree.
 Tu'ber, --is, *m.*, fruit of the tuber.
 Tû'des, --is or --itis, *f.*, hammer.
 Turbo, --inis, *f.*, whirlwind.
 Turbo, --nis, *m.*, Turbo.
 Turris, --is, *ac.*, --em or --im, *ab.*, --e or --i, *f.*, tower.
 Turtur, --is, *m.*, turtle-dove.
 Tussis, --is, *ac.*, --im, *f.*, cough.
 Týrannis, --idis, *f.*, tyranny.

U.

Ū'ber, --is, *n.*, pap, dug.
 Ū'do, --nis, *f.*, sock.
 Unguis, --is, *m.*, nail, hoof.
 Urbs, --is, *pl. g.*, --ium, *f.*, city.
 Ū'ter, --ris, *pl. g.*, --ium, *m.*, bottle.

V.

Valvæ, --arum, *f.*, no sing., folding-doors.
 Vannus, --i, *f.*, sieve.
 Vârîx, --icis, *m.* or *f.*, swollen vein.
 Vas, --adis, *pl. g.*, --ium, *m.*, surety.
 Vas, --asis, *pl.*, --a, --orum, *n.*, vessel.
 Vâ'tes, --is, *c.*, prophet, proph-etess.
 Yeotis, --is, *ab.*, --e or --i, *m.*, lever.
 Vê'les, --itis, *m.*, light-armed soldier.
 Venter, --ris, *m.*, belly.
 Vê'pres, --is, *m.*, viper.
 Ver, --is, *n.*, spring.

V	V
Verberis, (g.) ab., --e, only sing. cases used; pl., --a, --um, &c., throughout, n., stripe.	Vindex, --icis, c., avenger.
Vergilæ, --arum, f., no sing., seven stars.	Vindictæ, --arum, f., no sing., defence.
Vermes, --is, m., worm.	Vir, --i, m., man.
Verres, --is, m., boar-pig.	Virtus, --utis, f., virtue.
Vēru, --u, pl. d. & ab., --ubus, n., spit.	Virus, --i, n., no pl., poison.
Vervex, --ēcis, m., wedder.	Vis, ac., --im, ab., --i, only sing. cases used; pl., vires, --ium, &c., throughout, f., strength.
Vesper, ab., --e or --i, only case used, m., evening.	Viscum, --i, n., } viscous sub- —us, --i, m., } stance.
Vespera, --æ, f., no pl., even- ing.	Volup or --e, n., indecl., plea- sure.
Vetērum, --i, n., } lethargy. —us, --i, m., }	Vomer, } --eris, m., plough- —is, } share.
Vēcis, sing. nom. & v., and pl. g., d., & ab., not used, f., turn, stead.	Vox, --ocis, f., voice, pl., (com- monly,) words.
	Vulgus, --i, m. or n., rabble.
	Vultur, --is, m., vulture.

CHAP. II.—ADJECTIVES.

Note. Irregular adjectives may be divided into two classes :

1st, Irregular in inflection.

2d, Irregular in comparison.

[The adjectives should be written off in classes, as above mentioned.]

A.	A
Adoles'cens, --tis, m. & f. only gend. used, young; comp. regular, superl. not used.	alteri utri, the one or the other.
Al'iquot, indeclin., some.	Ambo, --æ, --o, (both,) decli- ned like duo. ‡
A'lus, --a, --ud, g., --ius, d., --i, neut. sing. ac., --ud, other.	Antērior, --or, --us, no pos. nor superl., former.
Alter, --era, --erum, g., --ius, d., --i, otherwise like tener, v. not used, the one, the other.	Arcānus, --a, --um, compar. reg- ular, superl. not used, secret.
Alterūter, --ra, --rum, g., --ius or alterius utrius, d., --ri or	Artifex, --ex, g., --icis, m. & f. only gend. used, ab., --e, pl. g., --um, cunning.

B.

- Bicorpor**, --or, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, double-bodied.
Bipes, --es, *g.*, --idis, *ab.*, --ide,
pl. g., --idum, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, two-footed.
Bonus, --a, --um, good, *comp.*,
mē'lior, better, *superl.*, *opti-*
mūs, best.

C.

- Centum**,* *indecl.*, hundred.
Citer, --ra, --rum, near, *comp.*
reg., *superl.*, *citimus*.
Compos, --os, *g.*, --otis, *m. & f.*
only gend. used, *ab.*, --e, *pl.*
g., --um, competent.
Concolor, --or, *g.*, --is, *m. and*
f. only gend. used, *ab.*, --e,
pl. g. not used, of the same
 color.
Consort, --s, *g.*, --tis, *ab.*, --te,
pl. g., --tum, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, participating.

D.

- Decem**, *indecl.*, ten.
Declivis, --is, --e, } *compar.*
 --us, --a, --um, } *regular*,
no superl., steep.
Degener, --er, *g.*, --is, *ab.*, --e,
pl. g., --um, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, degenerate.

* From *quat'or*, four, to *centum*, a hundred, Latin numeral adjectives of the cardinal class, are indeclinable. Most other words of this class, except *unus*, (one,) *duo*, (two,) *tres*, (three,) are declined like the *pl.* of *bonus*.

D

- Dēses**, --es, *g.*, --ētis, *ab.*, --e,
pl. g., --um, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, idle.
Dēterior, --or, --us, worse, *no*
pos., *superl.*, *deterimus*.
Dexter, --ra, --rum, right, *comp.*
reg., *superl.*, *dextimus*.
Diuturnus, --a, --um, *comp. reg.*,
superl. not used, lasting.
Dives, --es, *g.*, --itis, *ab.*, --ite,
pl. g., --itum, *m. and f. only*
gend. used, rich.
Dūo, --æ, --o, *g.*, --orum, --a-
rum, --orum, *d.*, --ō'bus, --ā-
bus, --ō'bus, *ac.*, --os or --o,
 --as, --o, *v.*, --o, --æ, --o, *ab.*,
 --obus, &c., two.
Duodēcim, *indecl.*, twelve.

E.

- Exanimis**, --is, --e, } *lifeless.*
 --us, --a, --um, }
Exilis, --is, --e, *comp. regular*,
superl. not used, small.

F.

- Facilis**, --is, --e, easy, *comp.*
regular, *superl.*, *facil'limus*.
Flebilis, --is, --e, *comp. regu-*
lar, *superl. not used*, lamen-
 table, mournful.

G.

- Gracilis**, --is, --e, slender, *comp.*
regular, *superl.*, *gracil'limus*.

H.

- Hēbes**, --es, *g.*, --ētis, *ab.*, --ete,
pl. g. not used, *m. & f. only*
gend. used, dull.
Hūmilis, --is, --e, humble, *comp.*
regular, *superl.*, *humil'limus*.

I.

- Imbec'ilis, --is, --e, } weak.
 -----us, --a, --um, }
 Impos, --os, g., --otis, ab., --ôte,
 pl. g., --otum, m. & f. only
 gend. used, impotent.
 Inc'lytus, --a, --um, no comp.,
 superl. regular, renowned.
 In'ferus, --a, --um, low, comp.
 reg., superl., infimus, low-
 est.
 Ingens, --s, --s, g., --tis, comp.
 reg., no superl., great.
 Inops, --s, g., --is; ab., --e, pl.
 g., --um, m. & f. only gend.
 used, void, destitute.
 Inter'us, --a, --um, internal,
 comp. regular, superl., in'ti-
 mus, inmost.

J.

- Juveni'lis, --is, --e, comp. reg.,
 superl. not used, youthful.
 Ju'venis, --is, g., --is, m. and f.
 only gend. used, comp., jū-
 nior, superl. not used, young.

M.

- Magnil'oquus, --a, --um, boast-
 ing, comp., magniloquentior,
 superl., --entissimus.
 Magnus, --a, --um, great, comp.,
 major, superl., maximus.
 Maled'icus, --a, --um, reproach-
 ful, comp., maledicentior, su-
 perl., --entissimus.
 Malev'olus, --a, --um, malevo-
 lent, comp., malevolentior,
 superl., --entissimus.
 Malus, --a, --um, bad, comp.,
 pejor, worse, superl., pessi-
 mus, worst.

M

- Mätü'rus, --a, --um, mature,
 comp. regular, superl., ma-
 turrimus.
 Mëmor, --or, g., --is, pl. g., --um,
 mindful, m. & f. only gend.
 Mer'itus, --a, --um, no comp.,
 superl. regular, deserving.
 Mille, indecl., thousand.
 Mirificus, --a, --um, wonder-
 ful, comp., mirificentior, su-
 perl., mirificentissimus.
 Multus, --a, --um, much, or
 many, comp., plus, more, u-
 sed in the neut. only, superl.,
 plurimus, most.

N.

- Nonägin'ta, indecl., ninety.
 Novus, --a, --um, new, no comp.,
 superl. reg.
 Novem, indecl., nine.
 Novem'dëcim, indecl., nineteen.
 Nullus, --a, --um, g., --ius, d.,
 --i, none.
 Nü'perus, --a, --um, recent, no
 comp., superl. reg.

O.

- Ō'clor, --or, --us, swift, no pos.,
 superl., ocissimus.
 Octo, indecl., eight.
 Octod'ëcim, indecl., eighteen.
 Octogin'ta, indecl., eighty.
 Op'imus, --a, --um, comp. reg.,
 superl. not used, rich.

P.

- Par, m., f., & n., g., --is, equal,
 no comp., superl. reg.
 Parvus, --a, --um, little, comp.,
 minor, less, superl., mini-
 mus, least.

P

- Panper**, --er, g., --is, ab., --e, pl. g., --um, m. and f. only gend. used, poor.
- Perpes**, --es, g., --étis, ab., --ete, pl. g. not used, m. & f. only gend. used, uninterrupted.
- Plus**, n., only gend. used, g., pluris, ab., --e, pl. nom., ac., & voc., --a or --ia, g., --ium, more.
- Posterus**, --a, --um, following, comp. regular, superl., *postre'mus*, last.
- Præ'pes**, --es, g., --étis, ab., --ete, pl. g. not used, m. & f. only gend. used, swift.
- Pri'or**, --or, --us, former, no pos., superl., *primus*, first.
- Pro'nus**, --a, --um, comp. reg., superl. not used, prostrate.
- Pro'pinquus**, --a, --um, comp. reg., no superl., near.
- Pro'pior**, --or, --us, nearer, no pos., superl., *proxim'us*.

Q

- Quadrāgin'ta**, indecl., forty.
- Quā'tuor**, indecl., four.
- Quatuor'décim**, indecl., fourteen.
- Quin'décim**, indecl., fifteen.
- Quinquāgin'ta**, indecl., fifty.
- Quinque**, indecl., five.
- Quot**, indecl., how many.
- Quotcun'que**, } indecl., how
- Quotquot**, } many soever.

R

- Regā'lis**, --is, --e, comp. reg., superl. not used, regal.
- Rē'ses**, --es, g., --īdis, ab., --ide, pl. g. not used, m. & f. only gend. used, idle.

S.

- Sā'cer**, --ra, --rum, holy, no comp., superl. reg.
- Sā'tior**, --or, --us, no pos. nor superl., better.
- Sā'tur**, --a, --um, comp. reg., superl. not used, full.
- Sē'nex**, --ex, g., --is or --icis, comp. reg., superl. not used, old.
- Septem**, indecl., seven.
- Septem'décim**, indecl., seventeen.
- Septuāgin'ta**, indecl., seventy.
- Sē'quior**, --or, --us, worse, no pos. nor superl.
- Sex**, indecl., six.
- Sexagin'ta**, indecl., sixty.
- Sex'décim**, indecl., sixteen.
- Sim'ilis**, --is, --e, comp. reg., superl., *simil'it'us*.
- Sospes**, --es, g., --itis, ab., --ite, pl. g., --um, m. and f. only gend. used, safe.
- Sū'perus**, --a, --um, high, comp. reg., superl., *supremus*.

T.

- Tē'res**, --es, g., --étis, ab., --ete, pl. g. not used, m. & f. only gend. used, round.
- Tot**, indecl., so many.
- Totidem**, indecl., just so many.
- Tred'écim**, indecl., thirteen.
- Tres**, --es, --ia, no sing., three.
- Trīgin'ta**, indecl., thirty.

U.

- U'ber**, --er, g., --is, ab., --e, pl. g., --um, m. & f. only gend. used, fruitful.
- Ullus**, --a, --um, g., --ius, d., --i, any.

U

U^lt^{er}ior, --or, --us, farther, no pos., superl., *ultimus*, farthest.

Un^{de}cim, indecl., eleven.

Unus, --a, --um, g., --ius, d., --i, one.

Uter, --ra, --rum, g., --rius, d., --ri, either.

Uterlibet, --ralibet, --rumlibet, g., --riuslibet, d., --rilibet, which of the two you please.

Uterque, --raque, --rumque, g., --riusque, d., --rique, both.

Utervis, --ravis, --rumvis, g.,

U

--riusvis, d., --riris, which of the two you please.

V.

Versicolor, --or, g., --is, ab., --e, pl. g. not used.

Vetus, m. f. & n. gen., --eris, ab., --ere, pl. g., --um, old, comp. reg., superl., *veterrimus*.

Vigil, --il, g., --is, ab., --e, pl. g., --um, m. & f. only gen. used, watchful.

Viginti, indecl., twenty.

CHAPTER III.—VERBS.

Irregular verbs may be divided into two classes. [See p. 147.]—Of these the following list forms the first.

[The verbs should be written off in classes, under the following heads :

1st, Verbs which are irregular in root ; as, Jā'cīo, --ere, jeci, &c.

2d, Verbs which are irregular in termination ; as, Cū'bo, --are, --ui, &c.

3d, Verbs which are irregular both in root and termination ; as, Do, --are, dedi, &c.]

A.

Abdo, --ere, --īdi, --itum, hide.

Abjic'io, --ere, abjeci, abjectum, throw away.

Abol'eo, --ere, --evi, --itum, abolish.

Abscon'do, --ere, --i or --īdi, --itum or absconsum, skulk.

Absisto, --ere, ab'stīti, abstītum, desist.

Absol'vo, --ere, --i, absolūtum, absolve, finish.

A

Asor'beo, --ere, --ui or absorpsi, absorptum, absorb.

Abstergeo or --o, --ere or --ere, abstersi, abstersum, wipe away.

Abstine'eo, --ere, --ui, no sup., abstain.

Abūtor, --i, abusum, abuse.

Accē'do, --ere, accessi, accessum, approach.

Accīdo, --ere, --i, no sup., happen.

A

Accipio, --ere, *accēpi*, *accep-
tum*, accept, receive.
Accumbo, --ere, *accū'bui*, *ac-
cū'bitum*, recline.
Accurro, --ere, --i or *accucur-
ri*, *accursum*, run to.
Addo, --ere, --idi, --itum, add.
Adhæreo, --ere, *adhæsi*, *adhæ-
sum*, adhere.
Adimo, --ere, *adē'mi*, *ademp-
tum*, take away.
Adipiscor, --i, *adeptus*, get.
Adicio, --ere, *adjeci*, *adjec-
tum*, add.
Admisceo, --ere, --ui, *admix-
tum*, mingle.
Admitto, --ere, *admī'si*, *admis-
sum*, admit.
Admulceo, --ere, *admū'si*, *ad-
mulsum*, soothe.
Adoleo, --ere, --evi, *adultum*,
grow up.
Adsciaco, --ere, --ivi, --itum,
call.
Adsto, --are, --ŕti, --itum, stand
by, assist.
Advēnio, --ire, --i, --tum, ar-
rive, come.
Afflicto, --ere, *affeci*, *affectum*,
affect.
Affrico, --are, --ui, --tum, rub
against.
Affluo, --ere, *affluxi*, *afflux-
um*, flow to, abound.
Aggrēdior, --i, *aggressus*, at-
tack, accost.
Agnosco, --ere, *agnovi*, *agni-
tum*, acknowledge.
A'go, --ere, *egi*, *actum*, act.
Algeo, --ere, *alsi*, no sup., to
be cold.

A

Al'labor, --i, *allapsus*, glide
up to.
Allic'eo, --ere, *allexi*, *allectum*,
allure.
Al'loquor, --i, *allocūtus*, ad-
dress.
Allū'ceo, --ere, *alluxi*, no sup.,
shine on.
Ā'lo, --ere, --ui, --itum or --tum,
nourish.
Ambigo, --ere, no perf. nor stu-
pine, surround.
Amicto, --ere, --ui, or *amixi*,
amictum, clothe.
Amitto, --ere, *amī'si*, *amissum*,
lose.
Aperto, --ire, --ui, *apertum*, o-
pen.
Ap'plico, --are, --avi or --ui,
--atum or --itum, apply.
Arc'eo, --ere, --ui, no sup., de-
bar.
Arces'so, --ere, --ivi, --itum,
summon.
Arde'eo, --ere, *arsi*, *arsum*, burn.
Arrid'eo, --ere, *arrī'si*, *arrī'sum*,
laugh at.
Aspic'eo, --ere, *aspexi*, *aspec-
tum*, behold.
As'sequor, --i, *assēcūtus*, attain.
Assid'eo, --ere, *assessi*, *asses-
sum*, sit by.
Attin'eo, --ere, --ui, *allentum*,
attain.
Attin'go, --ere, *at'tigi*, *attactum*,
touch.
Au'geo, --ere, *auxi*, *auctum*, in-
crease.

B.

Bened'ico, --ere, *benedixi*, *ben-
edictum*, bless.

B C

Benefic'io, --ere, *benefeci*, *benefactum*, benefit.

C.

Cædo, --ere, *cecidi*, *casum*, fall.
Cæcûtio, --ire, --ivi, *no sup.*, to be dim-sighted.

Cædo, --ere, *cecidi*, *cæsum*, cut, slay.

Calv'eo, --ere, --i, become bald.

Cam'bio, --ire, *campsi*, *camp-tum*, exchange money.

Cân'o, --ere, *cecini*, *cantum*, sing.

Cap'io, --ere, *cepi*, *captum*, take.

Cære'o, --ere, --ui, or *cassus sum*, --itum or *cassum*, to be void of.

Carp'o, --ere, *carpsi*, *carptum*, seize, gather.

Câ'veo, --ere, --i, *cantum*, take care, beware.

Cè'do, --ere, *cessi*, *cessum*, yield.

Cen'seo, --ere, --ui, *censum*, think, judge.

Cerno, --ere, *crevi*, *cretum*, behold, decree.

Ceveo, --ere, *no perf. nor supine*, wag, fawn.

Cleo, --ere, --vi, --tum, rouse.

Cingo, --ere, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, bind, gird.

Claudo, --ere, *clausi*, *clausum*, shut.

Clepo, --ere, --si, --tum, steal.

Cô'go, --ere, *coëgi*, *coactum*, compel.

Cô'lo, --ere, --ui, *cultum*, cultivate.

Com'edo, --ere, --i, *comēsum* or *comestum*, eat.

C

Como, --ere, *compsi*, *comptum*, deck.

Comminis'cor, --i, *commentus*, devise.

Commonef'cio, --ere, *commonefeci*, *commonefactum*, admonish.

Compes'co, --ere, --ui, *no sup.*, restrain.

Compléo, --ere, --evi, --etum, fill.

Concè'do, --ere, *concessi*, *concessum*, grant.

Condo, --ere, --idi, --itum, hide.

Confic'io, --ere, *confeci*, *confectum*, finish, disable.

Con'gruo, --ere, --ui, *no sup.*, agree, congregate.

Conniv'eo, --ere, --i or *connixi*, *connixum*, wink at.

Consto, --are, *constiti*, *constitutum* or *constatum*, cost.

Con'sullo, --ere, --ui, --tum, consult.

Contem'no, --ere, *contempsi*, *contemplum*, despise.

Cô'quo, --ere, *coxi*, *coctum*, boil.

Cor'ruo, --ere, --ui, *no sup.*, rush together.

Crè'do, --ire, --idi, --itum, believe.

Crepo, --are, --ui, --itum, make a noise.

Cresco, --ere, *crevi*, *cretum*, grow.

Cû'bo, --are, --ui, --itum, lye.

Câ'do, --ere, --i, *cusum*, stamp.

Cû'pio, --ire, --ivi, --itum, desire.

Curro, --ere, *cucurri*, *cursum*, run.

D.

- Dē'do, --ēre, --idi, --itum, sur-
render.
Dedō'cō, --ēre, --ui, --tum,
un-teach.
Defēdo, --ēre, --i, --sum, de-
fend.
Defitī's'cor, --i, defessus, grow
weary.
Dēgo, --ēre, --i, no sup., spend.
Del'ēgo, --ēre, --i, delectum,
chuse.
Dē'lēo, --ēre, --evi, --etum, de-
stroy.
Dē'mo, --ēre, dempsi, demp-
tum, take away.
Dep'so, --ēre, depui, deptum,
knead.
Descēdo, --ēre, --i, sum, de-
scend.
Dīco, --ēre, dixi, dictum, (im-
perat. mood, sing. num., 2d
pers., dic,) say.
Dil'igo, --ēre, dilexi, dilectum,
love.
Discēdo, --ēre, discessi, disces-
sum, depart.
Dis'co, --ēre, did'ici, no sup.,
learn.
Div'ido, --ēre, divi'si, divi'sum,
divide.
Do, --are, dē'di, datum, give.
Dō'cō, --ēre, --ui, --tum, teach.
Dō'mo, --are, --ui, --itum, sub-
due.
Dūco, --ēre, duxi, ductum, (im-
perat. mood, sing. num., 2d
pers., duc,) lead.

E.

- Efic'io, --ēre, effeci, effectum,
effect.

E F

- E'gēo, --ēre, (--ui, seldom,)
sup. not used, need.
El'ēgo, --ēre, --i, electum, se-
lect.
E'mo, --ēre, --i, emptum, buy.
Erip'io, --ēre, --ui, ereptum,
snatch, rescue.
Evādo, --ēre, evāsi, evā'sum,
escape.
Excēdo, --ēre, excessi, exces-
sum, depart.
Ex'colo, --ēre, --ui, excultum,
cultivate.
Existo, --ēre, extūi, exstūm,
be, exist.
Expergis'cor, --i, experrectus,
awake.
Expērtor, --iri, expertus, try.

F.

- Fā'cto, --ēre, feci, factum, make,
do.
Fallo, --ēre, fēfelli, falsum, de-
ceive.
Far'cto, --ire, farni, fartum,
cram.
Fā'tēor, --eri, fassus, confess.
Fā'vō, --ēre, --i, fautum, fa-
vor.
Fervēo, --ēre, --i or ferbui, no
sup., boil.
Fī'go, --ēre, fixi, fixum, fix.
Fin'do, --ēre, fī'di, fissum,
cleave.
Fingo, --ēre, finxi, finctum,
feign.
Flecto, --ēre, flexi, flexum,
bend.
Flēo, --ēre, fleui, fletum, weep.
Flūo, --ēre, fluxi, fluxum, flow.
Fō'dio, --ēre, fossi, fozsum, dig.

F G

F
Fōvéo, --ēre, *fovi, fotum*, cherish.
Frango, --ēre, *fregi, fractum*, break.
Frēmo, --ēre, --ui, --itum, roar.
Fri'co, --ere, --ui or --avi, --tum or --atum, rub.
Fri'géo, --ēre, *frixi, no sup.*, to be cold.
Frīgo, --ēre, *frixi, frictum*, fry.
Frūor, --i, --itus or --ctus, enjoy.
Fū'gio, --ēre, --i, --itum, flee.
Ful'cio, --īre, *fulsi, fullum*, prop.
Fulgéo, --ēre, *fulsi, fulsum*, shine.
Fundo, --ēre, *fudi, fusum*, pour, scatter, rout.
Fungor, --i, *functus*, discharge.
Fū'ro, --ēre, *no perf. nor sup.*, to be mad.

G.

Gē'ro, --ēre, *gessi, gestum*, carry on, conduct, transact.
Gestio, --ire, --ivi, *no sup.*, exult.
Gigno, --ere, *genui, genitum*, produce.
Glā'bréo, --ēre, *no perf. nor sup.*, to be bare.
Glō'cio, ---ire, --ivi, *no sup.*, cluck.
Glū'bo, --ēre, *no perf. nor sup.*, strip, flay.
Grā'dior, --i, *gressus*, go.

H.

Hā'réo, --ēre, *hæsi, hæsum*, adhere.
Haurio, --ire, *hausi, háusum* or *haustum*, drink.

I.

Incē'do, --ēre, *incesi, incesum*, go, walk.
Incen'do, --ēre, --i, --sum, burn.
Indul'géo, --ēre, *indulsi, indul-tum*, indulge.
Invē'nio, --ire, --i, --tum, find.
Irascor, --i, (*seldom iratus*), to be angry.
Irrum'po, --ēre, *irrupi, irrup-tum*, break in.
Irruo, --ēre, *irruui, irrutum*, rush in.

J.

Jā'céo, --ēre, --ui, *no sup.*, lye.
Jā'cio, --ēre, *jeci, jactum*, throw.
Jū'béo, --ere, *jussi, jussum*, command, order.
Jun'go, --ēre, *junxi, junctum*, join.
Juvo, --are, *juvi, jutum*, help.

L.

Labor, --i, *lapsus*, glide.
Lactéo, --ere, *perf. and sup. not used*, suck.
Lā'do, --ēre, *læsi, læsum*, hurt.
Lavo, --are, --i, --atum, *lau-tum*, and *lotum*, wash, bathe.
Lin'go, --ēre, *linxi, linctum*, lick.
Lī'no, --erē, *livi or levi, litum*, daub.
Lin'quo, --ēre, *liqui, lictum*, *sup. seldom used*, leave.
Li'quor, --i, *no part.*, melt.
Liv'eo, --ēre, *no perf. nor sup.*, to be discolored.
Lō'quor, --i, --utus or *locutus*, speak.
Lū'céo, --ēre, *luxi, no sup.*, shine.
Lū'do, --ēre, *lusi, lusum*, play.

L M

Lū'géo, -ēre, luxi, no sup.,
grieve.

M.

Māledī'co, -ēre, maledīx'i, ma-
ledictum, reproach, curse.

Mā'neo, -ēre, mansi, mansum,
stay.

Mē'dēor, -eri, no sup., heal.

Mergo, -ēre, mersi, mersum,
sink.

Mē'tior, -iri, mensus, mea-
sure.

Mē'to, -ere, messui, messum,
reap.

Met'do, -ēre, metui, no sup.,
fear.

Mico, -are, -ui, no sup., glitter.

Misceo, -ēre, -ui, mistum or
mixtum, mix.

Misē'rēor, -eri, -itus or -tus,
pity.

Mitto, -ere, mī'si, missum, send.

Mordēo, -ēre, momordi, mor-
sum, bite.

Mō'rīor, -i, sometimes -iri,
mortuus, die.

Mō'véo, -ēre, -i, motum, move.

Mul'cēo, -ēre, mulsi, mulsum,
soothe.

Mul'géo, -ēre, mulsi, mulsum
or multum, milk.

Munga, -ere, munxi, munctum,
wipe.

N.

Nancis'cor, -i, nactus, find.

Nascor, -i, natus, to be born.

Nē'co, -are, -avi or -ui, -a-
tum, kill.

N O

Necto, -ere, nexi or nexui,
nectum, weave, knit.

Nē'o, -ē're, -evi, -etum, spin.

Nī'tor, -i, nisus or nixus,
strive.

Nosco, -ere, novi, notum, know.

Nū'bo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum, to
be married.

O.

Obliviscor, -i, oblītus, forget.

Occido, ere, oc'cidi, occā-
sum, fall.

Occido, -ere, occī'di, occī'-
sum, kill.

Oppē'rōr, -iri, -tus, wait for.

Op'pīmo, -ere, oppressi, op-
pressum, oppress.

Or'dīor, -iri, orsus & ordītus,
begin.

O'rīor, -iri, ortus, rise.

Ostendo, -ere, -i, ostensum or
ostentum, show.

P.

Pacis'cor, -i, pactus, agree,
bargain.

Pan'go, -ere, panxi, pē'gi or
pēp'ēgi, pactum, engage,
form an engagement.

Parco, -ere, parci or peperci,
parsum or parcitum, spare.

Pā'rēo, -ēre, -ui, no sup., obey.

Pā'rō, -ere, pēp'eri, partum,
produce.

Pā'tior, -i, passus, suffer.

Pecto, -ere, pexi or pexui,
pexum, comb.

Pello, -ere, pēp'uli, pulsus,
drive, expel,

P

Pen'deo or -o, *pependi, pen-*
-sum, hang.

Per'ago, -ère, *perēgi, perac-*
-tum, perfect.

Pergo, -ère, *perrexi, perac-*
-tum, proceed.

Peto, -ère, -ivi, -itum, seek,
ask.

Pinso, -ère, -i or -ui, -itum,
-um or *pistum, bake.*

Plango, -ère, *planxi, planc-*
-tum, beat, lament.

Plaudo, -ère, *plausi, plausum,*
applaud.

Plecto, -ère, *plexi or plexui,*
plait.

Pli'co, -are, -avi or -ui, -atum
or -itum, knit, fold.

Plū'o, -ère, -i or -vi, -tum, rain.

Pō'no, -ère, *posui, positum,*
place, put.

Pō'to, -are, -avi, *potum, sel-*
-dom potatum, drink.

Prævertor, -i, *no sup., out-*
strip.

Pran'deo, -ère, *prandi, pran-*
-sum, dine.

Prehen'do, -ère, -i or *prehen-*
-si, prehensum, seize.

Proficis'cor, -i, *profectus, set*
out, depart.

Promit'to, -ère, *promisi, pro-*
-missum, promise.

Prō'mo, -ère, *prompsi, promp-*
-tum, draw.

Psalla, -ère, -i, *no sup., play*
on an instrument.

Pungo, -ère, *pupugi, punctum,*
pierce.

Q.

Quæ'ro, -ère, *quæsi, quæsi-*
-tum, ask.

Quā'tio, -ère, *quassi, quas-*
-sum, shake.

Quē'ror, -i, *questus, com-*
plain.

Quies'co, -ère, *quēvi, quē-*
-tum, rest.

R.

Rā'do, -ère, *rāsi, rasum, shave,*
graze.

Rā'pio, -ère, -ui, -tum, drag,
seize, carry off.

Rau'cio, -ire, *rausi, rausum,*
to be hoarse.

Récip'to, -ère, *recēpi, recep-*
-tum, receive.

Rē'go, -ère, *rexī, rectum, rule.*

Regrē'dior, -i, *regressus, re-*
turn.

Relin'quo, -ère, *reli'qui, relic-*
-tum, relinquish, leave, for-
sake.

Reminis'cor, -i, *no part., rec-*
ollect.

Rē'or, -ē'ri, *ratus, think, sup-*
pose.

Rē'po, -ère, *repsi, reptum,*
creep, crawl.

Réscri'bo, -ère, *rescripsi, re-*
-scriptum, write in reply.

Respuo, -ère, *respui, respu-*
-tum, reject.

Ringor, -i, *no part., grin.*

Rū'do, -ère, -ivi, *no supine,*
bray.

Rumpo, -ère, *rupi, ruptum,*
break.

S.	S
Sa'lto, -ère, -tvi or -ui, -tum, leap, dance.	Sis'to, -ère, stili, statum, stop.
Sallo, -ère, -li, salsum, salt.	Sis'to, -ère, steti, statum, stand still.
Sā'pīo, -ère, -ui, no sup., to be wise.	Solvo, -ère, -i, solū'tum, loose.
Sat'āgo, -ère, sategi, satactum, to be busy or occupied.	Sō'no, -ā're, -ui, -itum, sound.
San'cio, -ire, -ivi, or sanxi, -itum or -tum, establish.	Sor'béo, -ē're, -ui or sorpsi, sorptum, draw up.
Sarcio, -ire, sarxi, sarsum, repair.	Sperno, -ē're, sprē'vi, spretum, despise.
Scā'bo, -ère, -i, no sup., scratch.	Spon'déo, -ere, sponodi, sponsum, betroth.
Scalpo, -ère, -si, -tum, carve.	Statuo, -ère, -i- -tum, establish, resolve.
Scindo, -ère, sci'di, scissum, cut.	Ster'no, -ère, stravi, stratum, overthrow.
Scisco, -ère, scivi, scitum, ordain.	Ster'to, -ere, -ui, no sup., snore.
Scrī'bo, -ère, scripsi, scriptum, write.	Strē'po, -ère, -ui, -itum, make a noise, roar.
Sculpo, -ère, -si, -tum, engrave.	Stringo, -ère, strinxi, stric-tum, bind.
Sē'co, -are, -ui, -tum, cut.	Strideo, -ē're, -ui, no sup., }
Sē'deo, ē're, -i, sessum, sit.	Strī'do, -ère, -i, " " }
Sen'tio, -ire, sensi, sensum, think.	crash, hiss, whizz.
Sepē'līo, -ire, -ivi, sepultum, bury.	Strud, -ère, struxi, structum, build, form.
Sē'pīo, -ire, -si, -tum, enclose.	Suā'deo, -ē're, suasi, suasum, persuade.
Sē'quor, -i, sequutus or secutus, follow.	Succē'do, -ère, successi, successum, succeed.
Sē'ro, -ère, sevi, satum, sow.	Sues'co, -ère, suevi, suetum, accustom.
Sē'ro, -ère, -ui, -tum, knit.	Sū'mo, -ère, sumpsi, sumptum, take.
Serpo, -ère, -si, -tum, creep.	Surgo, -ère, surrexi, surrectum, rise.
SI'do, -ère, sedi or sidi, sessum, perch.	
Sil'co, -ē're, -ui, to be silent.	
Singul'tio, -ire, -ivi, -um, sob.	
SI'no, -ère, sivi or sii, situm, permit.	

T.

Tango, -ère, tetigi, tactum, touch.

T

Tē'go, -ere, *texi, lectum*, cover.

Temno, -ere, *tempsi, temptum*, despise.

Tendo, -ere, *tētendi, tensum* or *tentum*, stretch, aim, go.

Tē'neo, -ē're, -ui, -tum, hold.

Ter'geo, -ē're, *tersi, tersum*, }

Ter'go, -ē're, " " } wipe.

Tē'ro, -ere, *tri'vi, tri'tum*,

Texo, -ere, -ui, -tum, weave.

Tingo, -ere, *tinxi, tinctum*, dip, tinge.

Ton'deo, -ē're, *tōtendi, tonsum*, clip.

Tō'no, -ere, -ui, -itum, thunder.

Tollo, -ere, *eustuli, sublatum*, raise.

Tor'queo, -ē're, *torsi, tortum*, throw, hurl.

Trā'ho, -ere, *traxi, tractum*, draw.

Transfi'go, -ere, *transfixi, transfixum*, pierce.

Trē'mo, -ere, -ui, no sup., tremble.

Trū'do, -ere, *truxi, trusum*, thrust.

Tur'geo, -ē're, *tursi*, no sup., swell.

U

Ulcis'cor, -i, *ultus*, avenge.

Unguo or -o, -ere, *unxi, unctum*, anoint.

U V

Urgeo, -ē're, *urvi*, no sup., press.

Uro, -ere, *ussi, ustum*, burn.

Utor, -i, *usus*, use.

U'vco, -ē're, *perf. & sup.* not used, to be wet.

V

Vā'do, -ere, *perf. & sup.* not used, go.

Vē'ho, -ere, *vexi, vectum*, carry.

Vello, -ere, -i or *vulsi, vulsum*, pull.

Vendo, -ere, *-idi, -itum*, sell.

Vē'neo, -ire, -ii, no sup., to be sold.

Vē'neo, -i re, -i, -tum, no sup., come.

Verro, -ere, *vervi, verum*, sweep.

Verto, -ere, -i, *versum*, turn.

Vesco, -i, no part., feed, or live on.

Vid'eo, -ē're, -i, *visum*, see.

VI'eo, -ē're, -evi, -ctum, bind with twigs.

Vin'cio, -ē're, *vinxi, vinctum*, bind.

Vin'co, -ere, *vici, victum*, conquer.

Vī'so, -ere, -i, no sup., visit.

Vī'vo, -ere, *vixi, victum*, live.

Vol'vo, -ere, -i, *volutum*, roll.

Vō'mo, -ere, -ui, -itum, discharge.

Vō'vco, -ē're, -i, *votum*, vow.

OBSERVATION ON COMPOSITION.

Composition makes sometimes a change on the parts of primitive verbs :

1st, A change of a *letter* or of a *syllable* in root ; as, (simple verb,) *Rapio*, *rapere*, *rapui*, *raptum* ; (compound,) *Corripio*, *corripere*, *corripui*, *correptum*.—(Simple verb,) *Pello*, *pellere*, *pepuli*, *pulsum* ; (compound,) *Compello*, --ere, *compuli*, *compulsum*.

2d, A change of one or more *principal parts* ; as, (simple verb,) *Fallo*, --ere, *fefelli*, *falsum* ; (compound,) *Refello*, --ere, *refelli*, *no sup*.

3d, A change of conjugation ; as, (simple verb,) *Do*, --āre, *dedi*, *datum* ; (compound,) *Condo*, --ere, *condidi*, *conditum*.

Note. The last two examples, and many verbs of the same classes, fall under more than one part of the observation ; thus, *Refello* comes under both the first and the second parts.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.—ANOMALIES.

Syntax of Substantives.

RULE II. Exception. *Opus* and *usus*, when they signify need, require an ablative; as, *Est opus pecuniâ*. There is need of money.

Syntax of Verbs.

RULE I. Exception. A verb in the infinitive mood, is sometimes used instead of a nominative case; as, *Mentiri est turpe*. To lie is base.

RULE III. Exception. The infinitive mood is sometimes governed by adjectives; as, *Poeta dignus legi*. A poet worthy to be read.

RULE VI. Note 2d. Exception. *Esse*, when situated as in note 2d, is sometimes followed by an accusative; as, *Licebat mihi esse negligentem*.

RULE VII. Exception 1st. *Egeo*, (want,) and *indigeo*, (want,) often govern a genitive; as, *Eget consilii*. He needs counsel.

2d. *Potior* sometimes governs a genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*. To possess the city.

3d. *Potior*, *fungor*, and *vescor*, sometimes govern an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*.

RULE VIII. Exception 1st. Some verbs of accusing, &c., take the accusative of a thing, and the genitive of a person; as, *Culpat ignaviam amici*. He blames the sluggishness of his friend.

2d. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, sometimes govern two accusatives, when one of the words which they govern is a pronoun; as, *Monuit me illud*. He advised me of that.

RULE V. Note. *Celo*, (conceal,) likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celarit me hanc rem*. He concealed this matter from me.

RULE XIV. Exception. Gerunds which govern an accusative case, are changed into *participles* in *--dus*, which are regulated by Rule XII. ; as, *Tempus petendi pacem*. Time of seeking peace :—changed into *tempus petendæ pacis*.—The gerund, when thus changed, retains its gerundial signification.

Syntax of Conjunctions.

RULE II. Exception. The nouns and verbs sometimes agree with the *nearest* substantive, and are *understood* to the rest ; as, *Ego et frater meus abibit*. I and my brother will go away.

Syntax of Prepositions.

RULE V. When a preposition is used with the power of a *conjunction*, it occasions the use of *plural* verbs, &c., in the same manner as a conjunction itself ; thus, *Quirinus, cum Remo fratre, dabunt jura*. Quirinus, (Romulus,) with his brother Remus, shall give laws.

GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Many of the rules of syntax are obviated by the use of a *preposition*, which produces a construction different from that which the syntax-rules assign to particular words or classes of words ; thus, if I wish to express, in Latin, the phrase, *a few of the soldiers*, I ought, according to Rule II., part 4th, on the syntax of adjectives, to say *pauci militum* ; but sometimes I may, with equal propriety, change the construction by a preposition, and say *pauci de militibus*.

CHAP. II.—APPLICATION OF SYNTAX.

Section I.—Classification of Sentences.

OBSERV. I. Sentences are either simple or compound.

DEFIN. A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative case, and one finite verb ; as, *Pastor dormit*. The shepherd sleeps. *Discipulus legit lectionem*. The scholar reads his lesson.

OBSERV. II. Simple sentences are of three kinds :

1st, Such as contain a *subject*, or nominative, and an *attribute*, or verb; as, *Pastor dormit*.

2d, Such as contain a *subject*, a *copula*, and a *predicate*.

Explan. The *subject* is that of which we speak, and is expressed by the nominative:—the *predicate* is that which we *predicate*, or say, of the subject, and which is usually expressed by a nominative, corresponding to that of the subject:—the *copula* is the word which *couples*, or connects, the subject and the predicate, and is usually a personal verb.—

Example. *Pastor dormit supinus*. The shepherd sleeps supine.

3d, Such as contain a *subject*, an *attribute*, and an *object*; as, *Discipulus legit lectionem*.

Explan. An *object* is that on which an action terminates.

OBSERV. III. Compound sentences are formed of simple sentences, connected usually by conjunctions and relatives; thus, (Simple sentences,) *Emi librum*. I bought the book.—(Compound,) *Emi et legi librum*. I bought and read the book. *Emi librum quem dixisti*. I bought the book which you mentioned.

Note. The number of the simple sentences which constitute a compound one, is not limited; but depends on the complexity of the thought which is expressed.

Recap. How are sentences classified? &c.

Section II.—Syntax applied to the Dependence of words in a sentence.

Explan. This application of syntax is that to which the learner has been partially accustomed, in the exercises which are subjoined to the rules of syntax, and which, for the sake of distinction, may be called *syntactical analysis*.—The following directions may serve as a guide to the analytical application of syntax, in lessons which the scholar must perform without assistance from his book.

DEFINITION I. Syntactical analysis is that application of syntax, which enables us to recognise the dependence of one word on another, according to the rules of concord and government.

Explan. This application of syntax would not be required to assist us in tracing the dependence of one word on an-

other, if every dependent word were always placed nearest to that on which it depends. The place of every word would then be a sufficient guide ; and the words, in Latin, as well as in English sentences, are sometimes found in this order. But the arrangement of Latin sentences, often separates to a great distance,—sometimes to the very extreme parts of a sentence,—words which are intimately connected in syntax ; so that, to the young learner who is unacquainted with the structure* of any other language than his own, the Latin order of words and phrases, must occasionally seem extremely confused and perplexing.—This difficulty will be partly removed by considering the twofold arrangement of words in sentences : 1st, *Natural* : 2d, *Artificial*.

DEFINITION II. *Natural* arrangement is that which presents the words of a sentence in the order in which they should occur, according to the rules of syntax ; thus, *Tempus fugit*. Time flees. *Vita est brevis*. Life is short. *Legit lectionem*. He reads the lesson.

Explan. Here we observe that the word *fugit*, follows the word *tempus*, on which it is dependent for its number and person, according to Rule I. on the syntax of verbs :—that the adjective *brevis*, follows the substantive *vita*, on which it is dependent for gender, number, and case, according to Rule I. on the syntax of adjectives, and follows the verb *est*, according to Rule II. on the syntax of verbs :—that the substantive *lectionem*, follows the verb *legit*, by which it is governed, according to Rule V. on the syntax of verbs.—This arrangement is called *natural*, because it is that which the rules of syntax have rendered natural to us.

DEFINITION III. *Artificial* arrangement is that which presents the words in an *artificial* order ; that is to say, in an order which deviates from the rules of syntax, and which is not natural to us ; because it is one to which we are not so much accustomed ; thus, *Fugit tempus*. *Brevis est vita*. *Lec-tionem legit*.

Explan. Here we observe that the words are placed in an order which entirely reverses that of syntax : the verb

* The word *structure* is derived from the Latin verb *struo*, (build, form, arrange, &c.) and is applied, in grammar, to the formation and arrangement of phrases and sentences.

fugit, precedes the nominative on which it is dependent : the adjective *brevis*, precedes the substantive on which it is dependent, and the verb which it ought to follow : the substantive *lectionem*, precedes the verb by which it is governed.

GENERAL RULE. As the rules of syntax are commonly founded on the signification of the words to which they relate, the application of the syntax-rules implies that the *construing*, or translating, of the words, accompanies the syntactical analysis.

OBSERV. I. Every sentence contains a *primary* verb and its nominative, expressed or understood.

Explan. By a *primary* verb is meant one which is not dependent on any other word than its own nominative. All other verbs in a sentence are *secondaries* to the primary.

OBSERV. II. The primary verb and its nominative form the basis of the thought which is expressed in the sentence. When we select these words, therefore, we obtain a view of the leading idea, and thus secure a key to the signification and the dependence of every word in the sentence.

Example of Syntactical Analysis.

Igitur, omnibus rebus quæ usui sunt ad bellum comparatis, Alexander, rex Macedonum, statim reversus est; atque exercitum suum in Africam duxit, ut templum Ammonis videret.

DIRECTION I. Read the Latin slowly and attentively, observing carefully the form and the place of every word.

II. Find the primary verb,* and parse and construe it.

Explan. The primary verb is commonly that which is not dependent on a conjunction or on a relative, connecting it to another verb in the same sentence. In the sentence which forms the example, there are four finite verbs. Of these the latter two are dependent on a conjunction which connects them to other verbs, and the first depends on a relative :

* The learner is directed to find the verb and not the nominative first, because the primary verb, being always expressed, is much more easily ascertained than the nom. ; whilst the nom. is often understood.

none of these three, therefore, can be the primary verb.—“*Reversus est*” is the only verb which is not connected to another in the same sentence, and is therefore the primary. [Here parse the verb as in the exercises under the syntax-rules.]—Construed, it signifies *returned*.

III. Find the nominative case to the primary verb.

1st, If expressed, it is the nominative which is not dependent on any other word in the sentence, and is not included in the same clause with a secondary verb; thus, the word “*rex*” in the example is found in the nominative case, but is dependent on “*Alexander*,” and therefore cannot be the nominative to the primary verb.—“*Alexander*” is the only nominative which is not dependent on another word, and is therefore nominative to the primary verb: [—parsed as in the syntactical exercises—] signifies *Alexander*. The leading idea, therefore, of the sentence, is, *Alexander returned*.

2d, If the nom. is not expressed, supply it—by looking back to the preceding sentence, and ascertaining, from the meaning of it, what must be nom. to the verb in the sentence which you are studying.

Note. When the nom. is not expressed, the nom. of the primary verb in the preceding sentence, is commonly the word which you are to supply.

IV. Having taken the primary verb and its nominative, as a key to the meaning and the dependence of the other words in the sentence, proceed as follows, parsing every word as it occurs.

V. Parse the word etymologically, referring, if necessary, to your dictionary, for assistance; and add now the derivation or the composition of the word, if it is a derivative or a compound; thus, “*igitur*” is a conjunction, &c.

VI. Parse the word syntactically, as follows:

1st, If the word is *declinable*, and has but one part which ends in the termination found, parse it as regulated by the rule of syntax which applies to that part; [See Recap. of Syntax:] thus, “*usui*”—termination peculiar to the dat., and as “*usui*” is attached to “*sunt*,” it must be parsed by Rule VI., part 4th, on the syntax of verbs.—If the termination of the word is common to two or more parts, look to the word or words with which it agrees, or with which it is

connected, or by which it is governed ; and parse it by the rule of syntax which that word implies ; thus, "omnibus,"—termination common to the pl. d. and ab., agrees with "rebus :—" "rebus" is governed by no word in the sentence, and is attended by a participle, and forms, therefore, an ablative absolute : "omnibus," accordingly, must be in the ablative case, agreeing with "rebus" by Rule I. on the syntax of adjectives.

[Direction VI., part 1st, will apply to every declinable word, whether noun, pronoun, or verb ; as may be proved by all the declinable words in the example.]

2d, If the word is *indeclinable* ;—if an *adverb*,—parse it usually as joined to the nearest verb, according to the etymological definition of adverbs, and Rule I. on the syntax of adverbs ; thus, "statim," parsed as joined to "reversus est."—If the word is a *preposition*, mention the words between which it shows a relation, according to the etymological definition of prepositions ; thus, the preposition "in" shows the relation between "duxit" and "Africam."—If the word is a *conjunction*, parse it either as connecting single corresponding words ; thus, "atque" connects "reversus est" and "duxit," according to the etymological definition of conjunctions, and Rule I. on the syntax of conjunctions :—or as connecting clauses or sentences.—*Note.* In the latter case, the verbs are not necessarily in the same mood ; thus, "ut" connects the last two clauses of the sentence which is given as an example ; but the verbs "duxit" and "viseret," by which it connects them, are in different moods. [See exception to Rule I. on the syntax of conjunctions.] The conjunction "igitur," at the beginning of the sentence, connects the sentence which forms the example, to one which is supposed to precede it ; and the connexion is formed by means of the verb "reversus est" and a verb in the preceding sentence.—If the word is an *interjection*, parse it as joined to a nominative, or to a vocative, expressed or understood, according to Rule I. on the syntax of interjections ; or sometimes, though rarely, as independent on other words.

Recap. What is syntactical analysis ? &c.

Section III.—Syntax applied to the Connection of Words in a sentence.

Explan. This application of syntax follows and depends on syntactical analysis : it does not, however, follow the order in which the words occur in a sentence, but throws together the words which are connected by the syntax, and arranges the sentence, according to its meaning, as well as supplies every word which is understood.—This method of applying syntax, may, for the sake of distinction, be called *syntactical synthesis*.

DEFINITION. Syntactical synthesis is that application of syntax, which presents a sentence arranged according to the syntactical connection of the words.

Example. "Igitur, &c." as before.

DIRECTION I., part 1st. When a sentence begins with a conjunction, or with a relative pronoun, or with any other word or phrase, which serves both as a reference to a foregoing sentence, and as an introduction to the one which you are studying, dispose of such words first ; thus, "igitur" connects the sentence which forms the example to one which is supposed to precede it. [See last section, Direction VI. part 2d.]—Suppose the verb of the preceding sentence to be *decretum est*. You show the connection of these words by merely pronouncing them in this order, "decretum est igitur reversus est," and reciting Rule I. on the syntax of conjunctions.

[*Note.* Some grammarians consider conjunctions situated like "igitur," as adverbs ; and would parse "igitur" as adverbially joined to "reversus est," by Rule I. on the syntax of adverbs.]

2d, When an ablative absolute stands at the beginning of a sentence, pronounce the words which form the case absolute ; and recite the Note to Rule XII. on the syntax of verbs.—Here the example varies a little from the direction ; for, as "rebus," the substantive, is attended by an adjective, ("omnibus,") the adjective must, on account of its intimate connection with the substantive, be joined to it, before the participle. Otherwise, "rebus comparatis" would have been the first syntax.

3d, Parse all the words which depend on the connecting and introductory words; thus, "rebus quæ," Rule I. on the syntax of pronouns, with the exception "quæ sunt," &c.

DIRECTION II. When you have parsed the connecting and introductory words, and all words depending on them, or, when the sentence has no words of that kind, proceed to the primary nominative and its dependent words, and parse them in succession; thus, "Alexander rex," Rule I. on the syntax of substantives; "rex Macedonum," Rule II. on the syntax of substantives.

III. Parse the primary verb and its nominative; thus, "Alexander reversus est," Rule I. on the syntax of verbs.

IV. Parse the words which are attached to the verb; thus, "statim reversus est," Rule I. on the syntax of adverbs.—[All the words which follow the primary verb are, in the sentence which forms the example, attached to that verb; but, if "atque" is left out, they form, of themselves, an entire sentence, and are therefore to be parsed, as far as they are dependent on one another, like a separate sentence; and consequently by the preceding and the following directions.]

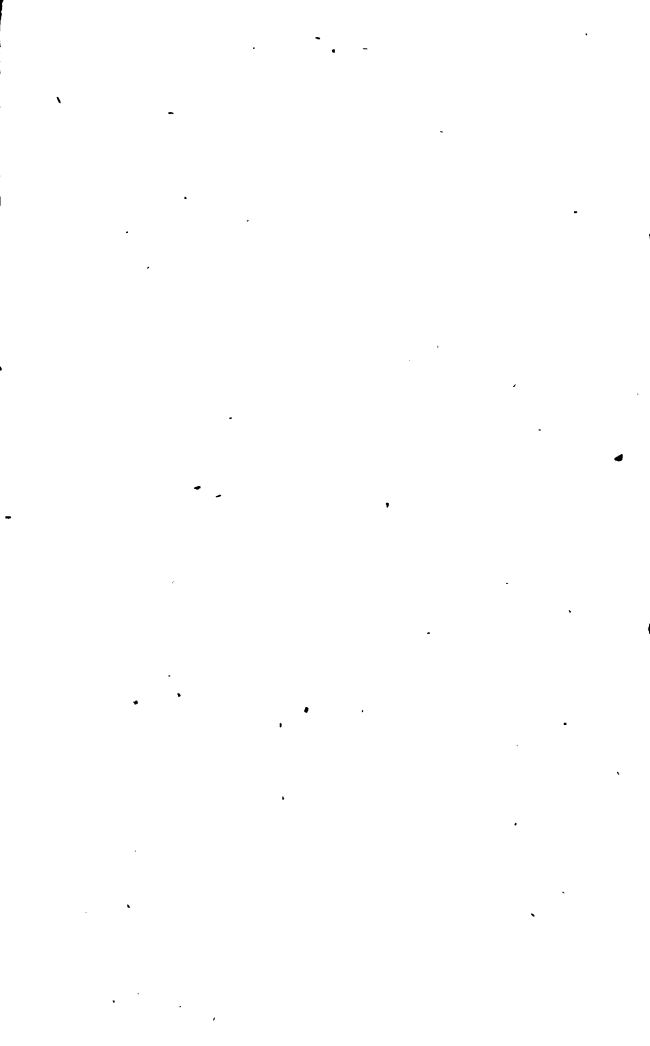
V. When the verb is transitive, parse the verb and its *regimen*, (governed word,) which is commonly an accusative case; thus, "duxit exercitum," Rule V. on the syntax of verbs.

VI. Parse the words which are attached to the regimen of the verb; thus, "exercitum suum," Rule I. on the syntax of pronouns.

Note. Some sentences will, from their simplicity and brevity, require but a few of the preceding directions. Others, again, will be found to contain a much greater number of connected and dependent words in every clause. But the directions which have been given, will always be found sufficient, if the learner keeps in mind, that every compound sentence is nothing else, than an assemblage of variously modified simple sentences.

The synthetical application of syntax, carried throughout the sentence which is given as an example, would throw the words together, in the following order.





RECOMMENDATION.



MR. RUSSELL,

Your Abridgement of the Latin Grammar is, in our view, judiciously executed ; and extremely well adapted, both by its arrangement and its numerous illustrations, to facilitate the progress of the younger class of students.

JAMES L. KINGSLEY,
CHAUNCEY A. GOODRICH.

Yale College, }
August 20, 1824. }

ERRATA.

The teacher is requested to correct, with his pen, the following errors, before giving the book to the pupils.

Page 34th, line 3d from the bottom, for *ut* read *us*.

35th, In the exception to Rule III., for *anim'ali* read *anim'ali*.

47th, line 7th from the bottom, for *fructu* read *fructus*.

58th, In the neut. sing. nom. of *Mitis*, for *mitis* read *mite*.

82d, In the line immediately above Recapitulation, for *Ecquinam* read *Ecquianam*.

111th, In the perf. plur., 3d person; insert or --*uer*.

177th, In the bottom-line, for *Dixi* read *Dicit*.

179th, line 9th from the top, for --*eo* read --*eor*.

215th, line 13th from the top, *dele ur*.

Appendix.

5th, left-hand column, line 6th from the top, for *cup* read a sort of *sty*.

["Decretum est.] Igitur reversus est"—"omnibus rebus"—"rebus comparatis"—"rebus quæ"—"quæ sunt"—"sunt usui"—"ad bellum"—"Alexander rex"—"rex Macedonum"—"Alexander reversus est"—"statim reversus est"—"reversus est atque duxit"—["Alexander] duxit"—"duxit exercitum"—"suum exercitum"—"in Africam"—"duxit ut viseret"—"viseret templum"—"templum Ammonis."

Recap. What is syntactical synthesis? &c.

Section IV.—Syntax applied to the order of Translation.

Explan. This application of syntax takes the words out of the order in which they usually stand in a sentence, and presents them *in succession*, according to the order of syntax, and of English structure, combined.—This exercise is accordingly called *Resolution*, [derived from *re* and *solvo* (loose,)] which signifies, literally, *untying*. The allusion implied in this word, supposes that the Latin order of a sentence is a knot which the reader unties, by arranging the words in the manner above mentioned.

DEFINITION. *Resolution* is that application of syntax which arranges a Latin sentence according to the syntactical order of words, and the structure of an English sentence.

DIRECTION. Proceed exactly as in synthesis, except the occasional repetition of some words, which is indispensable to synthesis, but inadmissible in resolution, and the mentioning of the syntax rules. [The exercise of resolution consists merely in pronouncing the words of a sentence, in the order mentioned in the above definition.]

Note 1st, When adjectives, &c. occur, they must be placed *before* their substantives; thus, "suum exercitum," not "exercitum suum."

2d, The rules on Clearness and Strength of Structure, as far as they embrace the arrangement of words and clauses, must now be learned from Murray's Grammar; and such words and clauses as admit of a diversity of arrangement, must be placed according to those rules.

The sentence which is given as an example of the application of syntax, stands thus, when arranged by resolution.

“ Igitur omnibus rebus quæ sunt usui ad bellum compitis Alexander rex Macedonum statim reversus est atque it suum exercitum in Africam ut viseret templum Ammonis.”

All that remains to be done, is the translation of the sentence, which may be performed either by inserting the English between the words and phrases of the Latin, or, (which is perhaps the better way, when analysis and synthesis are performed before resolution,) by pronouncing the English the whole sentence, without mentioning the Latin words a second time.

[Examples for practice would have been subjoined, but the work already swelled so much beyond the limits which were anticipated.—Any easy Latin author, how it may be taken, and sentences selected at the discretion of a teacher.]

Recap. What is resolution? &c.

Plan of a course of Latin reading, &c.

The following list may be useful to persons who are desirous of acquiring the Latin language by private application, and it may serve as a guide to young instructors who have not decided on a selection of authors.

After the use of this Abridgement, or any similar method of grammar, should follow, 1st, *Historia Sacra*. [The learner should here commence Latin exercises.—*Exempla Minoris* is, for this purpose, the best school book which is at present accessible in this country. After *Exempla Minoris* should come *Clarke's Introduction*, and after *Clarke*, *Elegantinæ*. Exercises in versification should accompany or follow prose exercises. *Bradley's Prosody*, if republished in this country, would here be a valuable assistant.] 2d, *Historia Græca*. 3d, *Narrationes Excerptæ*:—beginning at the beginning of history, and leaving off at the commencement of the first tract from Cæsar. 4th, *Cæsar*. 5th, *Ovid's Metamorphoses* (select parts.) [Grant's Grammar, or a similar work, should now be commenced.] 6th, *Virgil*. 7th, *Cicero*. 8th

9th, *Livy*. 10th, *Horace*. 11th, *Tacitus*. 12th, A
of *Terence's Comedies*, as a specimen of the dramatic
ers.

Young persons who are preparing for the first year of a
college course, may stop at any of the above authors, accord-
ing to the requirements of the college which they are to
enter. The whole course which has been laid down, will give
a private student as extensive a range of Latin reading, as
embraced at most colleges.

THE END.

* * The size and price of the Abridgement have exceeded,
considerably, the calculations formed at its commencement.
—The following circumstances, however, deserve considera-
tion. The appendix gives the learner every important ad-
vantage which may be thought to attend the use of Adam's
Grammar in the common form; and the recapitulations and
other exercises, are, at least, equal to an initiatory Latin
book in parsing and construing.

A. D. Maltby & Co.

HAVE PUBLISHED,

AND HAVE FOR SALE,

The following Valuable School-Books

EPITOME HISTORIÆ GRÆCÆ, cum Appendice Diis Et Heroibus Poeticis, Accedit Dictionarium Latine Anglicum, with Rules of Pronunciation in Reading Latin and a Chronological Table. Price 87 1-2 cts.

EXEMPLA MINORA: or, new English Examples, rendered into Latin: adapted to the Rules of Adam's Latin Grammar. For the Use of the Junior Classes, in the Grammar Schools in the United States. To which is added, Sentences to Sense Verses; or, a Set of Exercises, to be rendered into Latin Hexameters and Pentameters. Second Edition. Price 75 cts.

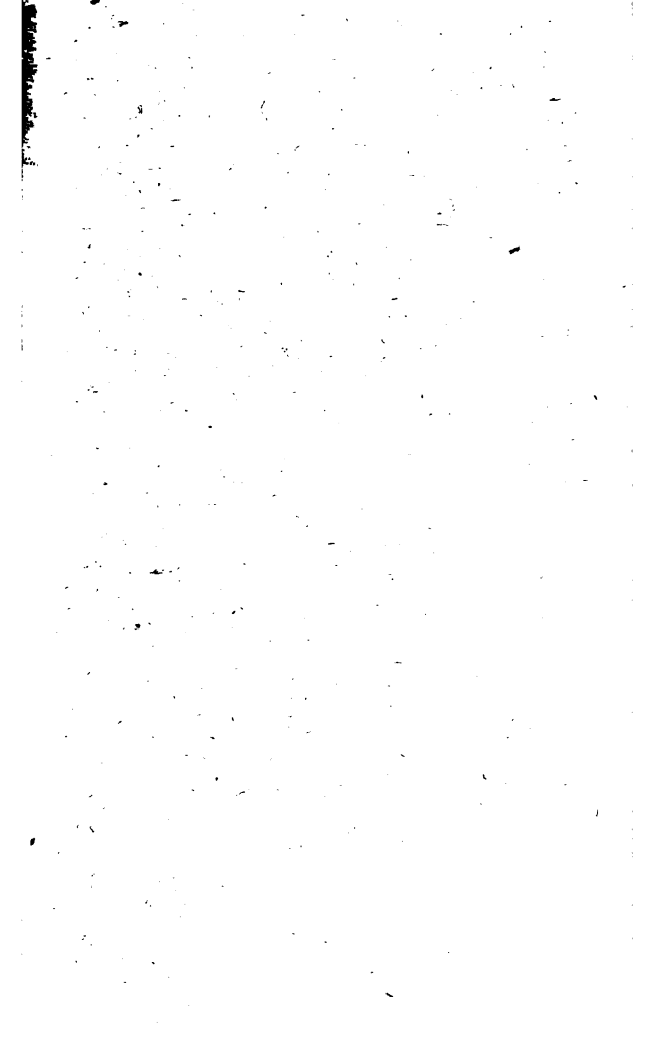
JAMIESON'S GRAMMAR OF RHETORIC and Poetical Literature, comprehending the Principles of Language, Style, the Elements of Taste, and Criticism; with Rules for the Study of Composition and Eloquence; Illustrated by appropriate Examples, selected chiefly from the British Classics, for the Use of Schools, or Private Instruction. Second Edition. Price \$1.

QUESTIONS to the same. Price 25 cts.

JAMIESON'S GRAMMAR OF LOGIC and Intellectual Philosophy, on Didactic Principles: For the Use of Schools and Private Instruction. Price \$1 25.

RUSSELL'S GRAMMAR OF COMPOSITION: Including a Practical Review of the Principles of Rhetoric, a series of Exercises in Rhetorical Analysis, and six Introductory Courses of Composition. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price 75 cts.

RUSSELL'S SUGGESTIONS ON EDUCATION; Relating Particularly to the Method of Instruction commonly adopted in Geography, History, Grammar, and the Classics. Price 19 cts.



REA



